# NUMBER THEORY I

### SARAH ZERBES

**Recommended books.** I will be following roughly the book Algebraic Number Theory and Fermat's Last Theorem by Ian Stewart and David Tall (3rd edition, Taylor & Francis, 2001). It is an excellent book, with many additional exercises. Other books that cover roughly the same material are Algebraic Number Theory by Fröhlich and Taylor (Cambridge University Press, 1991) and Introductory Algebraic Number Theory by Alaca and Williams (Cambridge University Press, 2003).

Course website: https://metaphor.ethz.ch/x/2022/hs/401-3111-72L/

# Contents

Recommended books	1
1. Introduction	2
1.1. Euclidean and Unique factorisation domains	2
1.2. Solving Diophantine equations	3
1.3. Field extensions	4
2. Algebraic number fields	5
2.1. Algebraic numbers	5
2.2. Field embeddings	5
2.3. Interlude: symmetric polynomials	5
2.4. Norms, traces and discriminants	8
3. Algebraic integers	12
3.1. Definition and basic properties	12
3.2. Integral bases	14
3.3. Example: cyclotomic fields	18
4. Factorisation in $O_K$	19
4.1. Units and irreducible elements in $O_K$	19
4.2. Factorisation into ideals	21
4.3. Prime ideals	22
4.4. Uniqueness of Factorization into ideals	24
4.5. The norm of ideals	28
4.6. The norm of prime ideals	30
4.7. Factorisation of ideals	32
5. An extended example: ramification in quadratic fields	33
5.1. The Legendre symbol	33
5.2. Quadratic reciprocity	34
5.3. Ramification in quadratic fields	37
6. The ideal class group	39
6.1. The main theorem	39
6.2. Lattices and Minkowski's theorem	40
6.3. Interlude: some cute applications of Minkowski'slemma	41
6.4. Geometry of numbers	42
6.5. Examples	45
7. Application to Diophantine Equations	48
8. Applications to Fermat's last Theorem	49
8.1. Basic properties of cyclotomic fields	49
8.2. Units in $O_F$	49
8.3. Fermat's last theorem for regular primes	50
8.4. Interlude: Fermat for $n = 4$	52
9. Units in number fields	53
9.1. Dirichlet's Unit Theorem	53

Lecture 1

9.2. Un	its in real quadratic fields	56
9.3. Sol	ving the general Pell equation	57
10. Zeta	a functions	59
10.1. T	he Riemann zeta function	59
10.2. T	he Dedekind zeta function	59
10.3. G	eometry of number fields	60
10.4. C	haracters of finite abelian groups	63
10.5. D	irichlet characters	64
10.6. D	irichlet <i>L</i> -functions	65
10.7. A	pplication to real quadratic fields	66
10.8. A	pplication to primes in arithmetic progressions	67

#### 1. INTRODUCTION

1.1. Euclidean and Unique factorisation domains. By a ring, we will always mean a commutative ring R with an identity element 1 distinct from 0.

Example 1.1. The Gaussian integers

$$\mathbb{Z}[i] = \{a + bi : a, b \in \mathbb{Z}\}$$

form a ring with the natural addition and multiplication.

**Definition 1.2.** An element  $a \in R$  is a unit if there exists  $b \in R$  such that ab = 1. We denote this element by  $a^{-1}$ . Note that  $a^{-1}$  is unique. We denote by  $R^{\times}$  the set of units in R; note that  $R^{\times}$  is a group under multiplication.

**Example 1.3.** (Exercise) We have  $\mathbb{Z}[i]^{\times} = \{\pm 1, \pm i\}$ .

**Definition 1.4.** A ring R is an integral domain if it has no zero-divisors; i.e. if  $a, b \in R$  satisfy ab = 0, then a = 0 or b = 0.

**Example 1.5.** The ring  $\mathbb{Z}[i]$  is an integral domain, as it is a subring of  $\mathbb{C}$  (which is a field, and hence automatically an integral domain). One can also show explicitly that the product of two non-zero Gaussian integers cannot be zero.

- **Definition 1.6.** (1) An element  $r \in R \{0\}$  is irreducible if it is not a unit, but if we write r = ab for some  $a, b \in R$ , then one of a, b must be a unit. Otherwise r is reducible, and a, b are factors of r.
  - (2) Two elements  $r, s \in R$  are associate if there exists  $u \in R^{\times}$  such that r = su. In this case we write  $r \sim s$ .

Example 1.7. Define the norm map

$$N: \mathbb{Z}[i] \to \mathbb{Z}, \quad a+ib = a^2 + b^2.$$

I claim that 2 + i is irreducible in  $\mathbb{Z}[i]$ . Indeed, we have N(2+i) = 5. Suppose now that 2 + i = xy for some  $x, y \in \mathbb{Z}[i]$ . Then by the multiplicativity of the norm, we must have

$$N(x)N(y) = 5$$

so either N(x) = 1 or N(y) = 1. But the only elements with norm 1 are the units, so we get a contradiction.

**Remark 1.8.** We can easily show that any  $x \in \mathbb{Z}[i]$  such that N(x) is a prime is irreducible. However, the converse is false!

**Definition 1.9.** A ring R is a unique factorisation domain (UFD) if it is an integral domain, and if

(1) every non-zero element  $x \in R - R^{\times}$  factors as a product

$$x = r_1 \dots r_n,$$

where the  $r_i$  are irreducible;

(2) this factorisation is unique up to units and up to reordering of the factors.

**Example 1.10.**  $\mathbb{Z}$  is a unique factorisation domain.

**Theorem 1.11.** The ring  $\mathbb{Z}[i]$  is a UFD.

To prove this result, we need to introduce the notion of a Euclidean domain:

**Definition 1.12.** Let R be an integral domain, and let  $\phi : R \to \mathbb{Z}$  be a function such that  $\phi(x) \ge 0$  for all  $x \in R$ , and  $\phi(0) = 0$ . Then R is a Eucliden domain if the division algorithm holds: for all  $x, y \in R$ ,  $y \ne 0$ , there exist  $q, r \in R$  such that x = qy + r and either r = 0 or  $\phi(r) < \phi(y)$ .

**Remark 1.13.** The elements q and r are not required to be unique.

**Proposition 1.14.** Any Euclidean domain is a UFD.

Proof. See Algebra 1.

(1)

We can now prove Theorem 1.11:

*Proof.* We take  $\phi$  to be the norm map N. We need to show that it satisfies the axioms of Definition 1.12. Let  $x, y \in \mathbb{Z}[i]$  with  $y \neq 0$ . Let  $z = \frac{x}{y}$ , and let q be an element of  $\mathbb{Z}[i]$  such that

$$|z-q| \le |z-q'|$$

for all  $q' \in \mathbb{Z}[i]$  (i.e. q is the lattice point closest to z.) By elementary geometry, we have  $|z - q| \leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ . Let r = x - qy. Then

$$N(r) = N(x - qy) = |x - qy|^2 = \left| y \left( \frac{x}{y} - q \right) \right|^2 = |y|^2 |z - q|^2 \le \frac{1}{2} N(y) < N(y).$$

1.2. Solving Diophantine equations. We will now see that we can use the property of unique factorisation to solve some Diophantine equations.

**Problem 1.15.** Determine all  $x, y \in \mathbb{Z}$  which satisfy

$$x^3 = y^2 + 1.$$

**Remark 1.16.** The equation (1) is an example of an elliptic curve. Elliptic curves play an important role in modern number theory; for example, they are central to Wiles' proof of Fermat's Last Theorem.

**Proposition 1.17.** The only solution is (x, y) = (1, 0).

*Proof.* Suppose that (x, y) is a solution. If x is even, then

$$x^3 \equiv 0 \pmod{8} \Rightarrow y^2 \equiv -1 \pmod{8}.$$

But this gives a contradiction since -1 is not a quadratic residue (mod 8).

Hence x is odd and y is even. Now factor (1) in  $\mathbb{Z}[i]$ :

$$(y+i)(y-i) = x^3.$$

Claim. y + i and y - i do not have a common factor: they are relatively prime. Proof of claim: suppose there exists  $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}[i]$  which is not a unit such that  $\alpha|(y+i)$  and  $\alpha|(y-i)$ . Then

$$\alpha | [(y+i) - (y-i)] = 2i,$$

so since  $2i = (1+i)^2$  and 1+i is irreducible, we deduce from unique factorisation that  $(1+i)|\alpha$ . Then

$$(1+i)|(y+i)(y-i)| = x^3$$

so by unique factorisation we deduce that 1+i devides x, i.e. there exists  $\beta \in \mathbb{Z}[i]$  such that  $x = (1+i)\beta$ . But then

$$x^{2} = x\bar{x} = (1+i)(1-i)\beta\beta = 2\beta\beta,$$

so  $x^2$  (and hence x) is even, which gives a contradiction. This proves the claim.

We now deduce from unique factorisation that each of y + i and y - i are of the form  $u\beta^3$  for some  $u \in \mathbb{Z}[i]^{\times}$  and  $\beta \in \mathbb{Z}[i]$ . Now the units in  $\mathbb{Z}[i]$  are all perfect cubes, so y + i and y - i are both cubes in  $\mathbb{Z}[i]$ .

Write  $y + i = (a + ib)^3$  for some  $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Then

$$y + i = (a^3 - 3ab^2) + (3a^2b - b^3)i \Rightarrow y = a(a^2 - 3b^2) \text{ and } 1 = b(3a^2 - b^2).$$

We deduce that  $b = \pm 1$ .

(1) If b = 1, then  $3a^2 = 2$ , which is clearly impossible.

Lecture 2

(2) If b = -1, then  $a = 0 \Rightarrow y = 0 \Rightarrow x = 1$ .

**Remark 1.18.** The proof relies crucially on the fact that unique factorisation holds in  $\mathbb{Z}[i]$ . It is tempting to use similar ideas in order to tackle more complicated equations.

Remark 1.19. Finding the integral solutions of the equation

$$x^3 = y^2 - 1$$

is much harder. Euler showed that the only non-trivial solutions (i.e. with  $xy \neq 0$ ) are  $(x, y) = (2, \pm 3)$ .

**Example 1.20.** Let  $p \ge 5$  be a prime, and consider Fermat's equation

$$Z^p = X^p + Y^p.$$

Suppose that there exists an integer solution with  $p \nmid xyz$ . Let  $\zeta$  be a primitive *p*th root of unity, and consider the ring  $\mathbb{Z}[\zeta]$ . Then (2) factorizes over  $\mathbb{Z}[\zeta]$  as

(3) 
$$z^{p} = (x+y)(x+\zeta y)(x+\zeta^{2}y)\dots(x+\zeta^{p-1}y)$$

Assume now that  $\mathbb{Z}[\zeta]$  is a UFD. It is then not difficult to prove (exercise) that the terms on the right of (3) are pairwise relatively prime, so each of these terms can be written as  $ur^p$  for some unit u and some  $r \in \mathbb{Z}[\zeta]$ . One can then derive a contradiction, similar to the argument above. The idea was pursued by Lamé and Kummer in trying to prove Fermat's last theorem. But Kummer realised that the ring  $\mathbb{Z}[\zeta]$  is almost never a unique factorisation domain! (In fact, it is only a UFD if and only if  $p \leq 19$ .)

Nonetheless, Kummer was able to make a lot of progress towards resolving Fermat's Last Theorem by suitably modifying this argument. First of all, he realized that even though unique factorization of elements into irreducibles often fails in  $\mathbb{Z}[\zeta]$ , a weaker property always holds: every ideal factors uniquely into a product of prime ideals. This discovery was really the birth of modern algebraic number theory. Kummer then initiated a careful study of the discrepancy between ideals of  $\mathbb{Z}[\zeta]$  and elements of  $\mathbb{Z}[\zeta]$ . This involves studying the so-called ideal class group, as well as the unit group, of the number ring  $\mathbb{Z}[\zeta]$ . In this way, Kummer was able to sufficiently understand the units, and to recover enough of a fragment of the unique factorization property in  $\mathbb{Z}[\zeta]$ , to show that Fermat's Last Theorem holds for what are now called "regular primes". We will discuss all of this in more detail later in the course. In fact, it can be fairly said that understanding the ideal class group and unit group of a number ring is our primary objective in this class.

**Remark 1.21.** Already the ring  $\mathbb{Z}[\sqrt{6}]$  does not have unique factorisation. Can you give an example?

1.3. Field extensions. We recall some results about field extensions:

**Definition 1.22.** Let  $K \subset L$  be fields. The dimension of L as a K-vector space is the degree of the extension L/K, denoted [L:K]. We say that the extension L of K is finite if  $[L:K] < \infty$ .

**Proposition 1.23.** (Tower law) If  $F \subset K \subset L$  are finite field extensions, then

$$[L:F] = [L:K][K:F].$$

**Definition 1.24.** Let L/K be a field extension, and let  $\alpha \in L$ . Then  $\alpha$  is algebraic over K if there exists a polynomial  $f(t) \in K[t]$  such that  $f(\alpha) = 0$ . If no such f exists, we say that  $\alpha$  is transcendental over K.

**Definition 1.25.** If  $\alpha$  is algebraic over K, there exists a unique monic polynomial  $f(t) \in K[t]$  of smallest degree such that  $f(\alpha) = 0$ . This polynomial is the minimal polynomial of  $\alpha$  over K.

**Definition 1.26.** If L/K is a field extension and  $\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n \in L$ , we define  $K(\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n)$  to be the smallest subfield of L containing  $\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n$ . We call this field the field obtained by adjoining to K the elements  $\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n$ .

The following theorem will be of fundamental importance in this course:

**Theorem 1.27.** If L/K is a field extension and  $\alpha \in L$ , then  $\alpha$  is algebraic over K if and only if  $K(\alpha)$  is a finite field extension of K. In this case, we have  $[K(\alpha) : K] = \partial(f)$ , where  $f \in K[t]$  is the minimal polynomial of  $\alpha$ , and a basis of  $K(\alpha)$  as a K-vector space is given by  $\{1, \alpha, \ldots, \alpha^{\partial(f)-1}\}$ .

#### 2. Algebraic number fields

2.1. Algebraic numbers. We now have all the necessary ingredients for studying field extensions. We will be particularly interested in the *algebraic extensions* of  $\mathbb{Q}$ :

**Definition 2.1.** We say that a complex number  $\alpha$  is algebraic if it is algebraic over  $\mathbb{Q}$ , i.e. if there exists a non-zero polynomial  $f(t) \in \mathbb{Q}[t]$  such that  $f(\alpha) = 0$ . Let  $\mathbb{A}$  denote the set of algebraic numbers.

**Definition 2.2.** An extension K of  $\mathbb{Q}$  is algebraic if every element of K is algebraic, i.e. if  $K \subset \mathbb{A}$ .

**Theorem 2.3.** The set  $\mathbb{A}$  is a subfield of the complex numbers.

*Proof.* We use Theorem 1.27, which says that  $\alpha$  is algebraic if and only if  $[\mathbb{Q}(\alpha) : \mathbb{Q}]$  is finite. Suppose that  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are algebraic. Then

 $[\mathbb{Q}(\alpha,\beta):\mathbb{Q}] = [\mathbb{Q}(\alpha,\beta):\mathbb{Q}(\alpha)][\mathbb{Q}(\alpha):\mathbb{Q}].$ 

Since  $\beta$  is algebraic over  $\mathbb{Q}$ , it is certainly algebraic over  $\mathbb{Q}(\alpha)$ , so  $[\mathbb{Q}(\alpha,\beta):\mathbb{Q}(\alpha)]$  is finite by Theorem 1.27. But each of  $-\alpha$ ,  $\alpha + \beta$ ,  $\alpha\beta$ , and (if  $\beta \neq 0$ )  $\alpha/\beta$  belong to  $\mathbb{Q}(\alpha,\beta)$ . So all of these are in  $\mathbb{A}$ , which proves the theorem.

**Definition 2.4.** A number field is a subfield K of  $\mathbb{C}$  such that  $[K : \mathbb{Q}] < \infty$ .

**Theorem 2.5** (Primitive element theorem). Let *L* be a number field. Then there exists  $\theta \in L$  such that  $L = \mathbb{Q}(\theta)$ ;  $\theta$  is called a primitive element for the extension  $L/\mathbb{Q}$ .

Intuitive proof. By Galois theory, K has only finitely many subfields. Let  $\theta$  be any element of K which does not lie in any of the subfields. Then we must have  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\theta)$ .

2.2. Field embeddings. We'll now think a bit about maps between fields, because that will help us to understand the structure of number fields.

**Definition 2.6.** Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\theta)$  be a number field. A (complex) embedding of K is a ring homomorphism  $K \to \mathbb{C}$ .

**Remark 2.7.** Suppose that  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\theta)$ , and let  $n = [K : \mathbb{Q}]$ . By Theorem 1.27,  $1, \theta, \ldots, \theta^{n-1}$  is a  $\mathbb{Q}$ -basis of K. If  $\sigma$  is any complex embedding of K, then  $\sigma$  is uniquely determined by  $\sigma(\theta)$ : if  $x = a_0 + a_1\theta + \cdots + a_{n-1}\theta^{n-1}$ , we have

$$\sigma(x) = a_0 + a_1 \sigma(\theta) + \dots + a_{n-1} \sigma(\theta)^{n-1}.$$

Recall the following theorem from Galois theory:

**Theorem 2.8.** Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\theta)$  be a number field, with  $[K : \mathbb{Q}] = n$ . Then there are exactly n distinct embeddings  $\sigma_i : K \hookrightarrow \mathbb{C}$ . The elements  $\sigma_i(\theta)$  are the distinct zeroes in  $\mathbb{C}$  of the minimal polynomial of  $\theta$  over  $\mathbb{Q}$ .

**Definition 2.9.** Let  $\theta \in \mathbb{C}$  be algebraic, and let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\theta)$ . Let  $\sigma_1, \ldots, \sigma_n$  be the embeddings of K into  $\mathbb{C}$ . Define the conjugates of x to be the elements  $\{\sigma_i(\theta) : i = 1, \ldots, n\}$ .

**Note 2.10.** Let  $\theta$  be algebraic, and let  $\theta_1 = \theta, \theta_2, \ldots, \theta_n$  be the conjugates of  $\theta$ . As  $\prod_{i=1}^n (t - \theta_i)$  is the minimal polynomial of  $\theta$  over  $\mathbb{Q}$  by Theorem2.8, it follows that both  $\theta_1 \cdots \theta_n$  and  $\theta_1 + \cdots + \theta_n$  are in  $\mathbb{Q}$ . We will see in the next section that this observation can be generalized: if  $g(X_1, \ldots, X_n) \in \mathbb{Q}[X_1, \ldots, X_n]$  is any symmetric polynomial, then  $g(\theta_1, \ldots, \theta_n) \in \mathbb{Q}$ . (Of course you can also prove this using Galois theory, but the results on symmetric functions are stronger, as they respect integral structures.)

#### 2.3. Interlude: symmetric polynomials.

**Definition 2.11.** Let K be a field and let  $f \in K[X_1, \ldots, X_n]$ . Then f is called a symmetric polynomial (in n variables) if for all permutations  $\sigma \in S_n$  we have

$$f(X_{\sigma(1)},\ldots,X_{\sigma(n)})=f(X_1,\ldots,X_n)$$

**Example 2.12.** The polynomials  $X_1 + X_2$ ,  $X_1X_2$ ,  $X_1^2 + 3X_1X_2 + X_2^2$  are symmetric in two variables. The polynomial

$$f(X_1, X_2, X_3) = X_1^3 X_2 + X_1^3 X_3 + X_2^3 X_1 + X_2^3 X_3 + X_3^3 X_1 + X_3^3 X_2 - X_1^2 X_2^2 X_3^2$$

in  $\mathbb{Q}[X_1, X_2, X_3]$  is symmetric in three variables. However, the polynomial

$$g(X_1, X_2, X_3) = X_1^2 X_2 + X_2^2 X_3 + X_3^2 X_1$$

is not symmetric, as it is not invariant under the transposition (2,3).

Lecture 3

Note 2.13. The symmetric polynomials in n variables form a subring  $\mathfrak{S}_n$  of  $K[X_1, \ldots, X_n]$ . Definition 2.14. The elementary symmetric polynomials in n variables are defined as

$$s_1 = X_1 + \dots + X_n,$$
  

$$s_2 = \sum_{1 \le i < j \le n} X_i X_j,$$
  

$$s_3 = \sum_{1 \le i < j < k \le n} X_i X_j X_k$$
  

$$\dots$$
  

$$s_n = X_1 X_2 \cdots X_n.$$

Example 2.15. The elementary symmetric polynomials in 3 variables are

$$s_1 = X_1 + X_2 + X_3,$$
  

$$s_2 = X_1 X_2 + X_2 X_3 + X_3 X_1$$
  

$$s_3 = X_1 X_2 X_3.$$

The following remark will be important later.

**Remark 2.16.** The elementary symmetric polynomials arise as follows: if  $f(X) \in \mathbb{C}[X]$  is of the form

$$f(X) = \prod_{i=1}^{n} (X - \alpha_i),$$

then by expanding this we obtain

$$f(X) = X^{n} - s_{1}(\alpha_{1}, \dots, \alpha_{n})X^{n-1} + \dots + (-1)^{n}s_{n}(\alpha_{1}, \dots, \alpha_{n})$$

The following theorem shows that the elementary symmetric functions are the building blocks for all symmetric functions:

**Theorem 2.17.** (Newton's theorem) Let K be a field. Then the subring  $\mathfrak{S}_n$  of  $K[X_1, \ldots, X_n]$  is generated as a ring over K by the elementary symmetric polynomials in n variables, i.e. every element  $h \in \mathfrak{S}_n$ can be written as a K-linear combination of elements of the form  $s_1^{a_1} \cdots s_n^{a_n}$ , where  $a_i \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}$  for all i.

*Proof.* The idea is to order the monomials lexicographically:

$$X_1^{a_1}\cdots X_n^{a_n} > X_1^{b_1}\cdots X_n^{b_n}$$

if and only if  $a_1 > b_1$  or  $a_1 = b_1$  and  $a_2 > b_2$  or  $a_1 = b_1$ ,  $a_2 = b_2$  and  $a_3 > b_3$  etc. We can therefore define the leading term of a polynomial in n variables. In particular, if f is symmetric, then its leading term is of the form  $\alpha X_1^{a_1} X_2^{a_2} \cdots X_n^{a_n}$  for some  $a_1 \ge a_2 \ge \cdots \ge a_n$  and  $\alpha \in K$ . Then the symmetric polynomial

$$\alpha s_1^{a_1-a_2} s_2^{a_2-a_3} \cdots s_n^{a_r}$$

has the same leading term as f, so  $f - \alpha s_1^{a_1-a_2} s_2^{a_2-a_3} \cdots s_n^{a_n}$  has a smaller leading term. We can now proceed by induction.

**Example 2.18.** Consider  $f(X_1, X_2, X_3) = X_1^2 X_2^2 + X_2^2 X_3^2 + X_3^2 X_1^2$ . The leading term of f is  $X_1^2 X_2^2$ , so  $a_1 = a_2 = 2$  and  $a_3 = 0$ . Hence we subtract  $s_1^0 s_2^2 s_3^0 = s_2^2$ :

$$f(X_1, X_2, X_3) - s_2^2 = X_1^2 X_2^2 + X_2^2 X_3^2 + X_3^2 X_1^2 - (X_1 X_2 + X_2 X_3 + X_3 X_1)^2$$
  
=  $-2(X_1^2 X_2 X_3 + X_1 X_2^2 X_3 + X_1 X_2 X_3^2).$ 

The leading term is  $-2X_1^2X_2X_3$ , so  $a_1 = 2$ ,  $a_2 = a_3 = 1$  and we subtract  $-2s_1s_3$ :

$$f(X_1, X_2, X_3) - s_2^2 + 2s_1s_3 = 0,$$

so  $f = s_2^2 + 2s_1s_3$ .

**Example 2.19.** Let  $f(X, X_2, X_3) = X_1^3 + X_2^3 + X_3^3$ . The leading term of f in the lexicographic ordering is  $X_1^3$ , so we subtract  $s_1^3$ :

$$f(X_1, X_2, X_3) - s_1^3 = -3(X_1^2 X_2 + X_2^2 X_3 + X_3^2 X_1 + X_1 X_2^2 + X_2 X_3^2 + X_3 X_1^2) - 6X_1 X_2 X_3.$$

The leading term of this expression is  $-3X_1^2X_2$ , so we subtract  $-3s_1s_2$ :

$$f(X_1, X_2, X_3) - s_1^3 - (-3s_1s_2) = 3X_1X_2X_3 = 3s_3$$

We deduce that

(4) 
$$X_1^3 + X_2^3 + X_3^3 = s_1^3 - 3s_1s_2 + 3s_3$$

We can apply this identity to study properties of the zeroes of polynomials of degree 3. Suppose for example that  $\alpha, \beta, \gamma$  are the zeros of the polynomial  $t^3 + 3t^2 + 6t + 15$ , i.e.

$$t^{3} + 3t^{2} + 6t + 15 = (t - \alpha)(t - \beta)(t - \gamma).$$

We then see from Remark 2.16 that

$$\begin{array}{rcl} -s_1(\alpha,\beta,\gamma) &=& 3\\ s_2(\alpha,\beta,\gamma) &=& 6,\\ -s_3(\alpha,\beta,\gamma) &=& 15. \end{array}$$

Then it follows from (4) that

$$\alpha^3 + \beta^3 + \gamma^3 = (-3)^3 - 3(-3 \times 6) + 3 \times (-15) = -27 + 54 - 45 = -18.$$

**Remark 2.20.** The same proof shows that the subring of symmetric polynomials of  $\mathbb{Z}[X_1, \ldots, X_n]$  is generated over  $\mathbb{Z}$  by the elementary polynomials.

Combining Remark 2.16 and Theorem 2.17, we obtain the following corollary:

**Corollary 2.21.** Let L be a field extension of K, and let  $f \in K[t]$  be a monic polynomial of degree n such that all the roots of f are contained in L. Denote the roots by  $\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n$ . If  $h(X_1, \ldots, X_n) \in K[X_1, \ldots, X_n]$  is symmetric, then  $h(\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n) \in K$ .

*Proof.* By assumption, f(t) factorises in L[t] as

$$f(t) = (t - \alpha_1) \cdots (t - \alpha_n)$$

so since  $f \in K[t]$ , we deduce from (2.16) that  $s_i(\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n) \in K$  for all *i*. By Theorem 2.17, it follows that  $h(\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n) \in K$  for all symmetric polynomials  $h(X_1, \ldots, X_n) \in K[X_1, \ldots, X_n]$ .

**Remark 2.22.** The same proof works if we replace the field K by the ring  $\mathbb{Z}$ : Let L be a field extension of  $\mathbb{Q}$ , and let  $f \in \mathbb{Z}[t]$  be a monic polynomial of degree n such that all the roots of f are contained in L. Denote the roots by  $\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n$ . If  $h(X_1, \ldots, X_n) \in \mathbb{Z}[X_1, \ldots, X_n]$  is symmetric, then  $h(\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n) \in \mathbb{Z}$ . This result is not immediate from Galois theory.

We can now give a new and explicit proof of Theorem 2.3 which states that A is a field:

*Proof.* We have to show that if  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{A}$ , then  $\alpha + \beta, -\alpha, \alpha\beta, \frac{1}{\alpha} \in \mathbb{A}$ . We first show that  $\alpha + \beta \in \mathbb{A}$ . We do this by constructing *explicitly* a monic polynomial  $h(t) \in \mathbb{Q}[t]$  such that  $h(\alpha + \beta) = 0$ . For  $\star \in \{\alpha, \beta\}$ , let  $f_{\star}(t) \in \mathbb{Q}[t]$  be the minimal polynomial of  $\star$  over  $\mathbb{Q}$ ; let  $m = \partial(f_{\alpha})$  and  $n = \partial(f_{\beta})$ . Let  $\beta_1 = \beta, \ldots, \beta_n$  be the conjugates of  $\beta$ . We will show that the polynomial

$$h(t) = f_{\alpha}(t - \beta_1) \cdots f_{\alpha}(t - \beta_n)$$

has coefficients in  $\mathbb{Q}$ . As it clearly satisfies  $h(\alpha + \beta) = 0$ , this will finish the proof.

Consider the product

(5) 
$$f_{\alpha}(t-x_1)f_{\alpha}(t-x_2)\cdots f_{\alpha}(t-x_n) = t^{mn} + u_{mn-1}(x_1,\dots,x_n)t^{mn-1} + \dots + u_0(x_1,\dots,x_n).$$

Note that we obtain h(t) by substituting  $\beta_1, \ldots, \beta_n$  for  $x_1, \ldots, x_n$  in (5), so we need to show that  $u_i(\beta_1, \ldots, \beta_n) \in \mathbb{Q}$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq mn$ . Now as  $f_\alpha \in \mathbb{Q}[t]$ , it is clear that  $u_i(x_1, \ldots, x_n) \in \mathbb{Q}[x_1, \ldots, x_n]$  for all *i*. Moreover, it is clear from the construction that the  $u_i$  are symmetric polynomials. By Corollary 2.21 we therefore deduce that

$$u_i(\beta_1,\ldots,\beta_n) \in \mathbb{Q} \qquad \forall 1 \le i \le mn,$$

as required. Hence  $\alpha + \beta \in \mathbb{A}$ . The proofs that  $-\alpha, \alpha\beta, \frac{1}{\alpha} \in \mathbb{A}$  are similar and left as exercises.

**Remark 2.23.** Using Remark 2.22, we see that the proof shows indeed something stronger: it proves that if both  $f_{\alpha}$  and  $f_{\beta}$  have coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}$ , then there exists a monic polynomial  $h(t) \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that  $h(\alpha + \beta) = 0$  (and similarly for  $\alpha\beta$  and  $-\alpha$ ). This will be very important later!

7

Lecture 4

2.4. Norms, traces and discriminants. Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\theta)$  be a number field of degree n, and let  $\sigma_1, \ldots, \sigma_n$  be the complex embeddings of K. Let  $\alpha \in K$ .

**Definition 2.24.** Define the norm and trace of  $\alpha$  by

$$N_{K/\mathbb{Q}}(\alpha) = \prod_{i=1}^{n} \sigma_i(\alpha) \quad and \quad \operatorname{Tr}_{K/\mathbb{Q}}(\alpha) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \sigma_i(\alpha)$$

Note 2.25. It is clear from the definitions that

- the norm is multiplicative: N(xy) = N(x)N(y), and
- the trace is additive: Tr(x + y) = Tr(x) + Tr(y).

We can use the theory of symmetric functions to show the following result:

**Proposition 2.26.** Both  $N_{K/\mathbb{Q}}(\alpha)$  and  $\operatorname{Tr}_{K/\mathbb{Q}}(\alpha)$  are in  $\mathbb{Q}$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\theta_i = \sigma_i(\theta)$ , so  $\theta_1, \theta_2, \ldots, \theta_n$  are the conjugates of  $\theta$ . As  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\theta)$ , there exists  $g(t) \in \mathbb{Q}[t]$  such that  $\alpha = g(\theta)$ . Then

$$N_{K/\mathbb{Q}}(\alpha) = \prod_{i=1}^{n} \sigma_i(g(\theta)) = \prod_{i=1}^{n} g(\sigma_i(\theta)) = \prod_{i=1}^{n} g(\theta_i),$$

which is clearly a symmetric polynomial in the  $\theta_i$  and hence lies in  $\mathbb{Q}$  by Corollary 2.21. The proof that  $\operatorname{Tr}_{K/\mathbb{Q}}(\alpha) \in \mathbb{Q}$  is similar.

**Example 2.27.** Consider the quadratic field  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ . If  $\alpha = a + b\sqrt{d} \in K$ , then

$$N_{K/\mathbb{Q}}(\alpha) = (a + b\sqrt{d})(a - b\sqrt{d}) = a^2 - db^2$$
  
Tr<sub>K/\mathbb{Q}</sub>(\alpha) = (a + b\sqrt{d}) + (a - b\sqrt{d}) = 2a.

**Example 2.28.** Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\zeta)$ , where  $\zeta = e^{\frac{2\pi i}{5}}$ . Then the minimal polynomial of  $\zeta$  over  $\mathbb{Q}$  is  $f(t) = t^4 + t^3 + t^2 + t + 1$  (why?), and the elements  $\{1, \zeta, \zeta^2, \zeta^3\}$  are a  $\mathbb{Q}$ -basis of K. Let  $\alpha = 1 - \zeta$ . Then  $N(\alpha) = 5$  and  $\operatorname{Tr}(\alpha) = 5$ .

We now introduce one of the most important objects in the course, the *discriminant*. We will see later that the discriminant can tell us whether or not a given set of elements of a number field is a  $\mathbb{Q}$ -basis (c.f. Corollary 2.38).

**Definition 2.29.** Let K be a number field, and let  $\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n$  be elements of K. Define a matrix  $A = (a_{ij})_{1 \le i,j \le n}$  by

$$a_{ij} = \operatorname{Tr}_{K/\mathbb{Q}}(\alpha_i \alpha_j).$$

Define the discriminant of the set  $\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n$  to be  $\Delta[\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n] = \det(A)$ .

**Example 2.30.** Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ , and define

$$\tau_d = \begin{cases} \sqrt{d} & \text{if } d \not\equiv 1 \pmod{4} \\ \frac{1+\sqrt{d}}{2} & \text{if } d \equiv 1 \pmod{4} \end{cases}$$

Note that  $\{1, \tau_d\}$  is a Q-basis of K. (In fact, it is a very special basis, as we will see in the next section.) Let us calculate the discriminant of this basis.

(1) Suppose that  $d \not\equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ . Then we have  $\operatorname{Tr}_{K/\mathbb{Q}}(\sqrt{d}) = \sqrt{d} - \sqrt{d} = 0$ , so

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} \operatorname{Tr}_{K/\mathbb{Q}}(1) & \operatorname{Tr}_{K/\mathbb{Q}}(\sqrt{d}) \\ \operatorname{Tr}_{K/\mathbb{Q}}(\sqrt{d}) & \operatorname{Tr}_{K/\mathbb{Q}}(d) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 2d \end{pmatrix},$$

so  $\Delta[1, \sqrt{d}] = 4d$ .

(2) If  $d \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ , then  $\tau_d = \frac{1+\sqrt{d}}{2}$ . We have  $\operatorname{Tr}(\tau_d) = 1$  and

$$\operatorname{Tr}_{K/\mathbb{Q}}(\tau_d^2) = \operatorname{Tr}_{K/\mathbb{Q}}\left(\frac{1+d+\sqrt{d}}{4}\right) = \frac{1+d}{2},$$
$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1\\ 1 & \frac{1+d}{2} \end{pmatrix},$$

 $\mathbf{SO}$ 

and  $\Delta[1, \tau_d] = \det(A) = d$ .

One can give an alternative characterisation of the discriminant as follows:

**Proposition 2.31.** Let K be a number field, and let  $\sigma_1, \ldots, \sigma_n$  be the embeddings of K into  $\mathbb{C}$ , and define the matrix  $C = (c_{ij})_{1 \le i,j \le n}$  by  $c_{ij} = \sigma_i(\alpha_j)$ . Then

$$\Delta[\alpha_1,\ldots,\alpha_n] = (\det(C))^2$$

*Proof.* Problem sheet 1.

**Corollary 2.32.** If  $\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n$  is a  $\mathbb{Q}$ -basis of K and  $\beta_1, \ldots, \beta_n \in K$ . Define the matrix  $D = (d_{ij})$  with  $d_{ij} \in \mathbb{Q}$  by

$$\beta_j = \sum_{i=1}^n d_{ij} \alpha_i.$$

Then

$$\Delta[\beta_1,\ldots,\beta_n] = \det(D)^2 \Delta[\alpha_1,\ldots,\alpha_n].$$

*Proof.* Problem sheet 1.

**Note 2.33.** If  $\beta_1, \ldots, \beta_n$  is also a  $\mathbb{Q}$ -basis of K, then D is just the change-of-basis matrix.

**Example 2.34.** Consider  $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{-3})$ . We already know from above that  $\Delta[1, \sqrt{-3}] = -12$ . What is

$$\Delta\left[1-\sqrt{-3},\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{-3}\right]?$$

We have

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 - \sqrt{-3} \\ 2\sqrt{-3} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \sqrt{-3} \end{pmatrix},$$

so Corollary 2.32 implies that

$$\Delta\left[1 - \sqrt{-3}, \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{-3}\right] = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 \times \Delta[1, \sqrt{-3}] = -3.$$

**Proposition 2.35.** Suppose that  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\theta)$  is a number field of degree n, and let  $\theta = \theta_1, \theta_2, \ldots, \theta_n$  be the conjugates of  $\theta$ . Then

$$\Delta[1,\theta,\ldots,\theta^{n-1}] = \prod_{i>j} (\theta_i - \theta_j)^2.$$

**Corollary 2.36.** We have  $\Delta[1, \theta, \dots, \theta^{n-1}] \neq 0$ .

*Proof.* Immediate from Proposition 2.35 and the fact that  $\theta_i \neq \theta_j$  if  $i \neq j$  (why?).

This proposition will follow immediately from Proposition 2.31 and the following result:

**Proposition 2.37.** Let  $X_1, \ldots, X_n$  be indeterminates. Then

$$\det \begin{pmatrix} 1 & X_1 & \dots & X_1^{n-1} \\ 1 & X_2 & \dots & X_2^{n-1} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ 1 & X_n & \dots & X_n^{n-1} \end{pmatrix} = \prod_{i>j} (X_i - X_j).$$

The matrix on the left is called the Vandermonde matrix.

*Proof.* We proceed by induction on n. The case for n = 2 is clear by explicit computation. Suppose that it is true for n - 1. Now consider the matrix

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & X_1 & \dots & X_1^{n-2} & X_1^{n-1} \\ 1 & X_2 & \dots & X_2^{n-2} & X_2^{n-1} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ 1 & X_n & \dots & X_n^{n-2} & X_n^{n-1} \end{pmatrix}.$$

Recall that the determinant is invariant under row and column operations. Substract  $X_1$ -times the (n-1)st column from the *n*th column to get

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & X_1 & \dots & X_1^{n-2} & 0 \\ 1 & X_2 & \dots & X_2^{n-2} & (X_2 - X_1)X_2^{n-2} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ 1 & X_n & \dots & X_n^{n-2} & (X_n - X_1)X_n^{n-2} \end{pmatrix}.$$

Lecture 5

Now subtract  $X_1$ -times the (n-2)nd column from the (n-1)st column to get

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & X_1 & \dots & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & X_2 & \dots & (X_2 - X_1)X_2^{n-3} & (X_2 - X_1)X_2^{n-2} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ 1 & X_n & \dots & (X_n - X_1)X_n^{n-3} & (X_n - X_1)X_n^{n-2} \end{pmatrix}.$$

Keep going, so in the end we get

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & X_2 - X_1 & \dots & (X_2 - X_1)X_2^{n-3} & (X_2 - X_1)X_2^{n-2} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ 1 & X_n - X_1 & \dots & (X_n - X_1)X_n^{n-3} & (X_n - X_1)X_n^{n-2} \end{pmatrix}.$$

It is now easy to calculate the determinant:

$$\det(A) = \det\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & X_2 - X_1 & \dots & (X_2 - X_1)X_2^{n-3} & (X_2 - X_1)X_2^{n-2} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ 1 & X_n - X_1 & \dots & (X_n - X_1)X_n^{n-3} & (X_n - X_1)X_n^{n-2} \end{pmatrix}$$
$$= \det\begin{pmatrix} X_2 - X_1 & \dots & (X_2 - X_1)X_2^{n-3} & (X_2 - X_1)X_2^{n-2} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ X_n - X_1 & \dots & (X_n - X_1)X_n^{n-3} & (X_n - X_1)X_n^{n-2} \end{pmatrix}$$
$$= (X_2 - X_1) \cdots (X_n - X_1) \det\begin{pmatrix} 1 & \dots & X_2^{n-3} & X_2^{n-2} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ 1 & \dots & X_n^{n-3} & X_n^{n-2} \end{pmatrix},$$

and we conclude by induction hypothesis.

**Corollary 2.38.** Let K be a number field of degree n, and let  $\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n \in K$ . Then  $\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n$  is a  $\mathbb{Q}$ -basis of K if and only if  $\Delta[\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n] \neq 0$ .

*Proof.* By Theorem 2.5, we can choose  $\theta \in K$  such that  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\theta)$ . Then  $1, \theta, \ldots, \theta^{n-1}$  is a  $\mathbb{Q}$ -basis of K by Theorem 1.27, and

$$\Delta[1, \theta, \dots, \theta^{n-1}] \neq 0$$

by Corollary 2.36. Let  $D = (d_{ij})$  be the matrix defined by

$$\alpha_j = \sum_{i=1}^n d_{ij} \theta^i$$

Then

$$\Delta[\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n] = \det(D)^2 \Delta[1, \theta, \dots, \theta^{n-1}]$$

by Lemma 2.32. As  $\det(D) \neq 0$  if and only if  $\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n$  is also a  $\mathbb{Q}$ -basis of K, this implies the result.  $\Box$ 

In other words, the discriminant can be used to detect whether a given set of elements of a number field is a Q-basis. However, it is not easy from the definitions to calculate the discriminant. The following result shows that in special circumstance we can use the norm to calculate the discriminant:

**Proposition 2.39.** Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\theta)$ , where  $\theta$  has minimum polynomial f(t) over  $\mathbb{Q}$  of degree n. Then the  $\mathbb{Q}$ -basis  $1, \theta, \ldots, \theta^{n-1}$  has discriminant

$$\Delta[1,\theta,\ldots,\theta^{n-1}] = (-1)^{\frac{1}{2}n(n-1)} N_{K/\mathbb{Q}}(Df(\theta)),$$

where  $Df(t) \in \mathbb{Q}[t]$  is the formal derivative of f(t).

*Proof.* Let  $\sigma_1 = id, \sigma_2, \ldots, \sigma_n$  be the embeddings of K, and let  $\theta_i = \sigma_i(\theta)$ , so in particular  $\theta_1 = \theta$ . Over  $\mathbb{C}$ , the polynomial f(t) factorises as

$$f(t) = (t - \theta_1) \cdots (t - \theta_n).$$

If we define

$$g_i(t) = \prod_{j \neq i} (t - \theta_j),$$

then  $f(t) = (t - \theta_i)g_i(t)$  for all  $1 \le i \le n$ , and

$$\sigma_i(g_1(t)) = \frac{f(t)}{\sigma_i(t-\theta_1)} = \frac{f(t)}{t-\theta_i} = g_i(t).$$

Then

$$Df(t) = g_1(t) + (t - \theta)Dg_1(t),$$
  
$$\Rightarrow \quad Df(\theta) = g_1(\theta) = \prod_{i=2}^n (\theta - \theta_i).$$

Taking the norm, we see that

$$N_{K/\mathbb{Q}}(Df(\theta)) = N_{K/\mathbb{Q}}(g_1(\theta))$$

$$= \prod_{j=1}^n \sigma_j(g_1(\theta))$$

$$= \prod_{j=1}^n g_j(\theta_j)$$

$$= \prod_{i \neq j} (\theta_j - \theta_i)$$

$$= \prod_{i < j} (\theta_j - \theta_i)(\theta_i - \theta_j)$$

$$= (-1)^{\frac{n(n-1)}{2}} \prod_{i < j} (\theta_i - \theta_j)^2$$

$$= (-1)^{\frac{n(n-1)}{2}} \Delta[1, \theta, \dots, \theta^{n-1}]$$

where the last equality follows from Proposition 2.35.

To give an example of how to use Proposition 2.39, let us look at cubic fields:

**Definition 2.40.** A number field K is cubic if  $[K : \mathbb{Q}] = 3$ .

**Lemma 2.41.** Let K be a cubic field. Then there exists  $\theta \in K$  such that  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\theta)$  and the minimal polynomial of  $\theta$  over  $\mathbb{Q}$  is of the form  $g(t) = t^3 + at + b$  for some  $a, b \in \mathbb{Q}$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\alpha$  be a primitive element of K. Then the minimal polynomial of  $\alpha$  over  $\mathbb{Q}$  is of the form

$$f(t) = t^3 + ct^2 + dt + e$$

for some  $c, d, e \in \mathbb{Q}$ . Let  $\theta = \alpha + \frac{c}{3}$ . Then clearly  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\theta)$ , and the minimal polynomial of  $\theta$  over  $\mathbb{Q}$  is  $f(t - \frac{c}{3})$ , which is of the required form.  $\Box$ 

**Corollary 2.42.** Let K be a cubic field, and let  $\alpha$  be a primitive element of K whose minimal polynomial over  $\mathbb{Q}$  is of the form  $f(t) = t^3 + at + b$ . Then

$$\Delta[1, \alpha, \alpha^2] = -27b^2 - 4a^3.$$

*Proof.* Let  $\beta, \gamma$  be the other two roots of f(t), so over  $\mathbb{C}$ , f(t) factorises as

$$f(t) = t^3 + at + b = (t - \alpha)(t - \beta)(t - \gamma),$$

which implies that

(6) 
$$s_1(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) = 0, \quad s_1(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) = a, \quad s_2(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) = -b.$$

Now we know from Proposition 2.39 that

$$\Delta[1, \alpha, \alpha^2] = -N_{K/\mathbb{Q}}(Df(\alpha)).$$

We calculate  $N_{K/\mathbb{Q}}(Df(\alpha))$  using the theory of symmetric polynomials: clearly  $Df(\alpha) = 3t^2 + a$ , so

$$N_{K/\mathbb{Q}}(Df(\alpha)) = \sigma_1(3\alpha^2 + a) \cdot \sigma_2(3\alpha^2 + a) \cdot \sigma_3(3\alpha^2 + a)$$
  
=  $(3\alpha^2 + a)(3\beta^2 + a)(3\gamma^2 + 3)$   
=  $27(\alpha\beta\gamma)^2 + 9a(\alpha^2\beta^2 + \beta^2\gamma^2 + \gamma^2\alpha^2) + 3a^2(\alpha^2 + \beta^2 + \gamma^2) + a^3$ 

To evaluate the coefficients, we express them in terms of the  $s_i(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$ . Applying the algorithm from Newton's theorem shows that

$$(\alpha\beta\gamma)^2 = s_1(\alpha,\beta,\gamma)^2 = b^2,$$
  

$$\alpha^2\beta^2 + \beta^2\gamma^2 + \gamma^2\alpha^2 = s_1(\alpha,\beta,\gamma)^2 - 2s_3(\alpha,\beta,\gamma)s_1(\alpha,\beta,\gamma) = a^2$$
  

$$\alpha^2 + \beta^2 + \gamma^2 = s_1(\alpha,\beta,\gamma)^2 - 2s_2(\alpha,\beta,\gamma) = -2a,$$
  

$$N_{K/\mathbb{Q}}(Df(\alpha)) = 27b^2 + 4a^3.$$

 $\mathbf{so}$ 

#### 3. Algebraic integers

### 3.1. Definition and basic properties.

**Definition 3.1.** An algebraic integer is a root in  $\mathbb{C}$  of a monic polynomial equation with integer coefficients. In other words,  $\beta$  is an algebraic integer if and only if there exist  $b_0, \ldots, b_{n-1} \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that

$$\beta^{n} + b_{n-1}\beta^{n-1} + \dots + b_0 = 0.$$

**Example 3.2.** The algebraic number  $\theta = \sqrt{-2}$  is an algebraic integer, since  $\theta^2 + 2 = 0$ . More surprisingly,  $\tau = \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$  (the "Golden Ratio") is an algebraic integer, since it satisfies  $\tau^2 - \tau - 1 = 0$ . We will later determine all the algebraic integers in quadratic fields.

Clearly every algebraic integer is an algebraic number. The following proposition shows that there are algebraic integers which are not algebraic numbers.

**Lemma 3.3.** If  $\alpha$  is an algebraic integer and  $\alpha \in \mathbb{Q}$ , then  $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}$ .

*Proof.* Write  $\alpha = a/b$  in lowest terms. Suppose  $\alpha$  is not an integer, so  $b \neq \pm 1$ . As  $\alpha$  is an algebraic integer, there are  $c_0, \ldots, c_{n-1} \in \mathbb{Z}$  with

$$\alpha^{n} + c_{n-1}\alpha^{n-1} + \dots + c_0 = 0.$$

Clearing denominators,

$$a^{n} + c_{n-1}a^{n-1}b + \dots + c_{0}b^{n} = 0$$

As  $b \neq \pm 1$ , b must have a prime factor, p say. Since a/b is in lowest terms, p doesn't divide a. But then we have

$$a^{n} = -(c_{n-1}a^{n-1}b + \dots + c_{0}b^{n})$$

and the right-hand side is divisible by p but the left-hand side is not, a contradiction.

The following fundamental result follows from our work on symmetric functions:

**Theorem 3.4.** The algebraic integers form a subring  $\mathbb{B}$  of  $\mathbb{A}$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{B}$ . Then Remark 2.23 shows that  $\alpha + \beta$ ,  $\alpha\beta$  and  $-\alpha$  are in  $\mathbb{B}$ , so  $\mathbb{B}$  is a ring.

We now give an alternative description of algebraic integers, resembling Theorem 1.27. First recall the following definition:

**Definition 3.5.** Let (G, +) be an abelian group. Then we say G is finitely generated if there is a finite subset  $x_1, \ldots, x_d$  of G such that every element  $y \in G$  can be written in the form

$$y = n_1 x_1 + \dots + n_d x_d$$

for some  $n_i \in \mathbb{Z}$ . We call  $x_1, \ldots, x_n$  generators of the group G.

**Examples 3.6.** (1) The additive group  $\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z}$  for any  $N \ge 1$  is finitely generated. (2) The additive group  $\left\{\frac{a}{2^i}: i \ge 0\right\}$  is not finitely generated.

Lemma 3.7. A subgroup of a finitely generated abelian group is finitely generated.

*Proof.* We won't prove this here, but it's not very hard to do (it suffices to check that any subgroup of  $\mathbb{Z}^n$  is finitely generated, and this can be shown pretty easily by induction on n).

**Proposition 3.8.** A complex number  $\alpha$  is an algebraic integer if and only if the additive group generated by the powers  $1, \alpha, \alpha^2, \ldots$  is finitely generated.



 $\Box$ 

**Remark 3.9.** Explicitly, this means that  $\alpha$  is an algebraic integer if and only if there exists  $N \ge 1$  such that for all m > N, there exist  $c_0, \ldots, c_N \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that

$$\alpha^m = c_0 + c_1 \alpha + \dots + c_N \alpha^N.$$

*Proof.* If  $\alpha$  is an algebraic integer, then there exists a monic polynomial  $f \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$  such that  $f(\alpha) = 0$ . By polynomial division, any polynomial  $g \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$  can be written in the form g = qf + r, with  $\partial(r) < \partial(f)$ ; and, since f is monic, we have  $r \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$ . In particular, we can do this for  $g(x) = x^n$  for any integer n. Then

$$\alpha^n = g(\alpha) = q(\alpha)f(\alpha) + r(\alpha) = r(\alpha),$$

since by assumption  $f(\alpha) = 0$ . Since r has degree  $\leq n - 1$  and integer coefficients, this shows that  $\alpha^n = r(\alpha)$  lies in the subgroup generated by  $1, \ldots, \alpha^{n-1}$ .

Conversely, suppose that the abelian group generated by the powers of  $\alpha$  is finitely generated. Then it has a finite generating set  $x_1, \ldots, x_n$ . Each of these generators can only mention finitely many powers of  $\alpha$ , so there is some finite N such that the subgroup is generated by  $1, \alpha, \ldots, \alpha^N$ . But then  $\alpha^{N+1}$  must be a linear combination, with integer coefficients, of  $1, \ldots, \alpha^N$ ; so  $\alpha$  satisfies a monic polynomial with integer coefficients of degree N + 1.

We can now give a new proof of Theorem 3.4:

*Proof.* Let  $\alpha, \beta$  be algebraic integers. We have to show that  $\alpha\beta$  and  $\alpha + \beta$  are also algebraic integers. By Proposition 2.11, all powers of  $\alpha$  lie in a finitely generated additive subgroup  $\Gamma_{\alpha}$  of  $\mathbb{C}$  (with generators  $v_1, \ldots, v_n$ ) and all powers of  $\beta$  lie in a finitely generated additive subgroup  $\Gamma_{\beta}$  of  $\mathbb{C}$  (with generators  $w_1, \ldots, w_m$ ).

Let  $\Gamma$  be the finitely generated additive group generated by  $\{v_i\}_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ ,  $\{w_j\}_{1 \leq j \leq m}$  and by the products  $v_i w_j$  with  $1 \leq i \leq n, 1 \leq j \leq m$ . Then all powers of  $\alpha + \beta$  and  $\alpha\beta$  lie in  $\Gamma$ , so it follows from Proposition 3.8 that they are all algebraic integers.  $\Box$ 

We now want to give a criterion for an algebraic number to be an algebraic integer in terms of the minimal polynomial. We first reall the following result:

**Lemma 3.10** (Gauss' lemma). Let  $f(t) \in \mathbb{Z}[t]$  and suppose f = gh for some  $g, h \in \mathbb{Q}[t]$ . Then there exists  $\lambda \in \mathbb{Q}$ ,  $\lambda \neq 0$ , such that both  $\lambda g(t)$  and  $\lambda^{-1}h(t)$  have coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}$ . In particular, f is irreducible in  $\mathbb{Q}[t]$  if and only if it is irreducible in  $\mathbb{Z}[t]$ .

**Proposition 3.11.** An algebraic number is an algebraic integer if and only if its minimal polynomial over  $\mathbb{Q}$  has integer coefficients.

*Proof.* If the minimal polynomial f of  $\alpha$  has integral coefficients, then  $\alpha$  is certainly an algebraic integer, since f is monic.

Conversely, suppose  $\alpha$  is an algebraic integer. Then it satisfies some monic integral polynomial F with integer coefficients. So F is divisible by f, by the definition of the minimal polynomial; hence we can write F = fg for some  $f, g \in \mathbb{Q}[t]$ . By Gauss's Lemma, we can find  $\lambda \in \mathbb{Q}$  such that  $\lambda f$  and  $\lambda^{-1}g$  have integer coefficients.

Since f is monic, the leading coefficient of  $\lambda f$  is just  $\lambda$ . In particular,  $\lambda \in \mathbb{Z}$ . But the leading coefficient of f must divide the leading coefficient of F, which is 1. So  $\lambda = \pm 1$ . Since f has integer coefficients if and only if -f does, the result follows.

**Definition 3.12.** Let K be a number field. We define the ring of integers of K to be the ring  $O_K = \mathbb{B} \cap K$ .

**Example 3.13.** Suppose that  $\alpha = a + bi \in \mathbb{Q}(i)$  with  $b \neq 0$ . Then the minimal polynomial of  $\alpha$  over  $\mathbb{Q}$  is

$$f(t) = t^2 - 2at + (a^2 + b^2),$$

so  $\alpha$  is an algebraic integer if and only if both 2a and  $a^2 + b^2$  are in  $\mathbb{Z}$ . Hence the ring of integers of  $\mathbb{Q}(i)$  is  $\mathbb{Z}(i) = \{a + bi : a, b \in \mathbb{Z}\}.$ 

Let K be a number field. Given an element  $\alpha \in K$ , we can also use the norm and trace operators to test whether  $\alpha \in O_K$ :

**Proposition 3.14.** Let  $\alpha \in K$ . If  $\alpha$  is an algebraic integer, then  $\operatorname{Tr}(\alpha)$  and  $N(\alpha) \in \mathbb{Z}$ .

*Proof.* Example sheet.

Lecture 7

**Example 3.15.** Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt[3]{2})$ , and let  $\alpha = \frac{1}{3}\sqrt[3]{2} + \frac{1}{2}\sqrt[3]{2^2}$ . Is  $\alpha$  an algebraic integer? An easy calcuation shows that  $N(\alpha) = \frac{31}{54}$ , so  $\alpha$  is certainly not an algebraic integer.

Warning. Proposition 3.14 is not an if-and-only-if criterion!

3.2. Integral bases. Let K be a number field of degree n. Recall that a  $\mathbb{Q}$ -basis of K is a basis for K as a  $\mathbb{Q}$ -vector space. We now want to define a 'basis' for the ring of integers of K. Recall that  $O_K$  is an Abelian group.

**Definition 3.16.** An integral basis of K is a  $\mathbb{Q}$ -basis of K which is also a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis for  $O_K$ . In other words, a  $\mathbb{Q}$ -basis  $x_1, ..., x_n$  of K is an integral basis of K if for every  $\alpha \in O_K$  there exist unique  $a_1, ..., a_n \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that

$$\alpha = a_1 x_1 + \dots + a_n x_n.$$

**Example 3.17.** 1 is an integral basis of  $\mathbb{Q}$ ;  $\{1, i\}$  is an integral basis of  $\mathbb{Q}(i)$ . But  $\{1, \sqrt{5}\}$  is not an integral basis of  $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{5})$ , since we know that  $\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$  is an algebraic integer.

It is not immediately clear that every number field has an integral basis.

3.2.1. *Existence of integral bases.* The aim of this section is to show that every number field has an integral basis. We start with the following elementary observation:

**Lemma 3.18.** Let  $\alpha$  be an algebraic number. Then there is a nonzero integer c such that  $c\alpha$  is an algebraic integer.

Proof. Exercise.

As a corollary, we get the following result:

**Corollary 3.19.** Let K be a number field. Then there exists a  $\mathbb{Q}$ -basis  $\{\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n\}$  of K such that  $\alpha_i \in O_K$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ .

The following observation will be useful:

**Lemma 3.20.** If  $\{\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n\}$  is a  $\mathbb{Q}$ -basis of K such that  $\alpha_i \in O_K$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ , then  $\Delta[\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n] \in \mathbb{Z}$ .

*Proof.* Since  $O_K$  is a ring, it is clear that  $\alpha_i \alpha_j \in O_K$  for all i, j. Then Proposition 3.14 implies that  $\operatorname{Tr}(\alpha_i \alpha_j) \in \mathbb{Z}$ . As  $\Delta[\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n]$  is by definition the determinant of the matrix with entries  $\operatorname{Tr}(\alpha_i \alpha_j)$ , this finishes the proof.

We can now prove the main result of this section:

**Theorem 3.21.** Every number field K has an integral basis. More precisely, if  $\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n \in O_K$  is a  $\mathbb{Q}$ -basis of K such that  $|\Delta[\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n]|$  is minimal, then it is an integral basis.

*Proof.* By Corollary 3.19, there exists a  $\mathbb{Q}$ -basis of K consisting of algebraic integers. Let  $w_1, \ldots, w_n$  be such a basis with  $\Delta[w_1, \ldots, w_n]$  minimal. We now argue by contradiction: suppose that  $w_1, \ldots, w_n$  is not an integral basis. Then there exists an algebraic integer  $\beta \in O_K$  such that

 $\beta = a_1 w_1 + \dots + a_n w_n$ 

for some  $a_i \in \mathbb{Q}$ , not all of which are in  $\mathbb{Z}$ . Suppose without loss of generality that  $a_1 \notin \mathbb{Z}$ . Then

$$a_1 = a + r,$$

where  $a \in \mathbb{Z}$  and 0 < r < 1. Define

 $\psi_1 = \beta - aw_1$ , and  $\psi_i = w_i$  for  $2 \le i \le n$ .

Then  $\psi_1, \ldots, \psi_n$  is a Q-basis of K consisting of integers, and the determinant of the change of basis matrix from  $\{w_1, \ldots, w_n\}$  to  $\{\psi_1, \ldots, \psi_n\}$  is

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 - a & a_2 & a_3 & \dots & a_n \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ & & \ddots & & \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 1 \end{vmatrix} = r,$$

and hence Corollary 2.32 implies that

$$\Delta[\psi_1,\ldots,\psi_n] = r^2 \Delta[w_1,\ldots,w_n]$$

Lecture 8

and  $|\Delta[\psi_1, \ldots, \psi_n]| < |\Delta[w_1, \ldots, w_n]|$  since 0 < r < 1. This gives a contradiction by the choice of  $w_1, \ldots, w_n$ .

**Corollary 3.22.** Suppose that  $\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n \in O_K$  are a  $\mathbb{Q}$ -basis of K. If  $\Delta[\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n]$  is square-free, then  $\{\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n\}$  is an integral basis of K.

*Proof.* Let  $\beta_1, \ldots, \beta_n$  be an integral basis. Then there exist  $c_{ij} \in \mathbb{Z}$  for  $1 \leq i, j \leq n$  such that  $\alpha_i = \sum_{j=1}^n c_{ij}\beta_j$ . Let  $C = (c_{ij})_{1 \leq i, j \leq n}$ . By Corollary 2.32 this implies that

$$\Delta[\alpha_1,\ldots,\alpha_n] = (\det(C))^2 \Delta[\beta_1,\ldots,\beta_n]$$

Since the left-hand side is square-free, we must have  $det(C) = \pm 1$ , so that the matrix C is uni-modular, i.e. its inverse also has entries in  $\mathbb{Z}$ . Hence  $\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n$  is also a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis of  $O_K$ , which finishes the proof.  $\Box$ 

However, this corollary is **NOT** an *if and only if* criterion!

**Example 3.23.** Recall that if  $K = \mathbb{Q}(i)$ , then we know that  $\{1, i\}$  is an integral basis. However,  $\Delta[1, i] = -4$ , which is certainly not square-free.

**Example 3.24.** Let  $f(t) = t^3 - t - 1$ . We first note that f is irreducible in  $\mathbb{Z}[t]$  (and hence in  $\mathbb{Q}[t]$ , by Gauss' lemma), as is reduction (mod 2) has no root and is hence irreducible. Let  $\alpha$  be a root of f(t) (it is clearly an algebraic integer), and let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\alpha)$ . Then  $1, \alpha, \alpha^2$  is a  $\mathbb{Q}$ -basis of K by Theorem 1.27, and Corollary 2.42 shows that

$$\Delta[1, \alpha, \alpha^2] = -23.$$

As 23 is prime, we deduce from Theorem 3.22 that  $\{1, \alpha, \alpha^2\}$  is an integral basis of  $O_K$ .

So given a general number field, how do we find an integral basis? The proof of Theorem 3.21 gives an algorithm:

- Start with any  $\mathbb{Q}$ -basis  $\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n$  of K consisting of algebraic integers.
- Calculate  $\Delta[\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n]$ , and let N be the largest integer whose square divides N.
- If N = 1, the basis  $\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n$  is integral by Corollary 3.22.
- If N > 1, then for each element of the form

$$\theta = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i \alpha_i, \quad \text{with } 1 \le a_i < N$$

determine whether  $\theta$  is an algebraic integer. If it is, then replace one of the  $\alpha_i$  for which  $a_i \neq 0$  by  $\theta$  to get a new basis with discriminant of smaller absolute value, and start again with step 2.

• If none of the  $\theta$  are algebraic integers (or N = 1), you have found an integral basis.

**Example 3.25.** Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{5})$ . We start with the  $\mathbb{Q}$ -basis  $1, \sqrt{5}$  of K. The two embeddings of K are determined by  $\sqrt{5} \mapsto \pm \sqrt{5}$ , so we have

$$\Delta[1,\sqrt{5}] = \det \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \sqrt{5} \\ 1 & -\sqrt{5} \end{pmatrix}^2 = 2^2 \cdot 5.$$

Hence N = 2, and we need to check whether any of the elements  $\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$ ,  $\frac{\sqrt{5}}{2}$  are algebraic integers. We know from Lemma 3.3 that  $\frac{1}{2}$  is not an algebraic integer.

What about  $\alpha = \frac{1}{2}(1 + \sqrt{5})$ ? Its minimal polynomial is  $t^2 - t - 1$ , so  $\alpha$  is an algebraic integer. We calculate the discriminant of the new basis:

$$\Delta[1,\alpha] = \det \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2} \\ 1 & \frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2} \end{pmatrix}^2 = 5,$$

which is square-free, so  $1, \alpha$  is an integral basis of K.

**Theorem 3.26.** Let  $d \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \{0, 1\}$  be square-free and let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{n})$ .

- If  $d \not\equiv 1 \mod 4$  then  $\{1, \sqrt{d}\}$  is an integral basis of K.
- If  $d \equiv 1 \mod 4$  then  $\left\{1, \frac{1+\sqrt{d}}{2}\right\}$  is an integral basis of K.

Proof. Course work 3.

**Example 3.27.** Let  $\alpha$  be a root of the polynomial  $f(t) = t^3 + 11t + 4$ . Note that f(t) is irreducible in  $\mathbb{Q}[t]$  as its reduction (mod 3) has no root. It follows from Theorem 1.27 that if we let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\alpha)$ , then  $[K : \mathbb{Q}] = 3$ , and  $1, \alpha, \alpha^2$  is a  $\mathbb{Q}$ -basis of K. Corollary 2.42 implies that

$$\Delta[1, \alpha, \alpha^2] = -1439 \cdot 2^2.$$

As 1439 is prime, we have N = 2, and we need to check whether any of the numbers  $\frac{1}{2}(a + b\alpha + c\alpha^2)$ ,  $a, b, c \in \{0, 1\}$  are algebraic integers. Let us start with  $\frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \alpha^2)$ . In order to see whether this element is an algebraic integer, we determine its minimal polynomial, using the theory of symmetric polynomials. Let  $\alpha = \alpha_1, \alpha_2\alpha_3$  be the roots of f(t). Then the polynomial

$$g(t) = \left(t - \frac{\alpha_1 + \alpha_1^2}{2}\right) \left(t - \frac{\alpha_2 + \alpha_2^2}{2}\right) \left(t - \frac{\alpha_3 + \alpha_3^2}{2}\right)$$

has  $\frac{\alpha + \alpha^2}{2}$  as a root, and as it is symmetric in  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3$ , it is coefficients in  $\mathbb{Q}$  by Corollary 2.21. Explicitly, if we write

$$g(t) = t^3 + at^2 + bt + c$$

then one can show (after a long and messy calculation) that a = 11, b = 36 and c = 4. Hence  $\frac{\alpha + \alpha^2}{2}$  is an algebraic integer.

We now have a new basis of K consisting of algebraic integers, namely  $1, \alpha, \frac{\alpha + \alpha^2}{2}$ . Is it an integral basis? We have

$$\Delta \left[ 1, \alpha, \frac{\alpha + \alpha^2}{2} \right] = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \end{vmatrix}^2 \times \Delta[1, \alpha, \alpha^2]$$
$$= \frac{1}{4} \Delta[1, \alpha, \alpha^2]$$
$$= -1439,$$

which is prime, so  $1, \alpha, \frac{\alpha + \alpha^2}{2}$  is an integral basis by Corollary 3.22.

3.2.2. Tricks for calculating integral bases. Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\theta)$ , and let f(t) be the minimal polynomial of  $\theta$  over  $\mathbb{Q}$ . We assume without loss of generality that  $\theta \in O_K$ . If f(t) satisfies Eisenstein's criterion, then there is a special trick for calculating integral bases. We start with the following two elementary observations.

**Lemma 3.28.** Suppose that f(t) satisfies Eisenstein's criterion for the prime p. We have  $p|N(\theta)$ , but  $p^2 \nmid N(\theta)$ .

*Proof.* This is clear since

$$f(t) = \prod_{i=1}^{n} (t - \sigma_i(\theta))$$

where  $\sigma_1, \ldots, \sigma_n$  are the embeddings of K.

**Lemma 3.29.** Suppose that f(t) satisfies Eisenstein's criterion for the prime p. Then  $p|\Delta[1, \theta, \dots, \theta^{n-1}]$ .

*Proof.* We use Proposition 2.39 to prove the lemma. By assumption,  $f(t) \equiv t^n \pmod{p\mathbb{Z}[t]}$  so we have  $Df(t) \equiv nt^{n-1} \pmod{p\mathbb{Z}[t]}$ . Using the definition of the norm as a product over all the conjugates, we deduce that

$$N(Df(\theta)) \equiv N(n\theta^{n-1}) \pmod{p}$$
 in  $\mathbb{Z}$ .

Now  $N(n\theta^{n-1}) = N(n)N(\theta)^{n-1}$  and  $p|N(\theta)$  by Lemma 3.28, which implies that

$$N(Df(\theta)) \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$$

As  $\Delta[1, \theta, \dots, \theta^{n-1}] = (-1)^{\frac{n(n-1)}{2}} N(Df(\theta))$ , this finishes the proof.

So p could potentially make our life difficult when we calculate an integral basis. However the next result tells us that we will never need to worry about this factor.

**Proposition 3.30.** Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\theta)$ ; let  $n = [K : \mathbb{Q}]$ . Let f(t) be the minimal polynomial of  $\theta$  over  $\mathbb{Q}$ , and assume that f(t) is Eisenstein for the prime p. Let

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{p} \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} a_i \theta^i, \quad a_i \in \{0, \dots, p-1\} \text{ not all } 0$$

16

Lecture 9

#### Then $\alpha$ is not an algebraic integer.

Before we give the proof, we study an example to illustrate how useful Proposition 3.30 is.

**Example 3.31.** Let  $\theta$  be a root of the polynomial  $f(t) = t^p - p$ , and let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\theta)$ . Then  $N(\theta) = -p$ and  $Df(t) = pt^{p-1}$ , and so

$$\Delta[1, \theta, \dots, \theta^{p-1}] = (-1)^{\frac{p(p-1)}{2}} N(p\theta^{p-1})$$
$$= p^{2p-1}.$$

We have  $N = p^{p-1}$ , so according to the algorithm, we need to check whether any of the numbers

$$\frac{1}{p^{p-1}}\sum_{i=0}^{p-1}a_i\theta^i$$

with  $0 \le a_i < p^{p-1}$  are algebraic integers. We know from Proposition 3.30 that no element of the form

(7) 
$$-(b_0 + \dots + b_{p-1}\theta^{p-1}) \quad b_i \in \{0, \dots, p-1\}, \text{ not all zero}$$

is an algebraic integer. If  $x = \frac{1}{p^{p-1}} \sum_{i=0}^{p-1} a_i \theta^i$  for some  $0 \le a_i < p^{p-1}$ , not all zero, write

$$x = \frac{1}{p^r} \sum_{i=0}^{p-1} a'_i \theta^i$$

with  $a'_i \in \mathbb{Z}$  for all i and  $(a_j, p) = 1$  for at least one j. If x is an algebraic integer, then so is  $p^{r-1}x$ . But we have

$$p^{r-1}x = y + \frac{1}{p}(b_0 + \dots + b_{p-1}\theta^{p-1})$$
  $b_i \in \{0, \dots, p-1\}, y \in \mathbb{Z}[\theta].$ 

Note that of the  $b_i$  must be non-zero since  $(a_j, p) = 1$  for at least one j. But if  $p^{r-1}x \in O_K$  and  $y \in \mathbb{Z}[\theta] \subset O_K$ , then

$$\frac{1}{p}(b_0 + \dots + b_{p-1}\theta^{p-1}) = p^{r-1}x - y \in O_K.$$

But this gives a contradiction by (7). Hence  $1, \theta, \ldots, \theta^{n-1}$  is an integral basis of K.

We now prove Proposition Proposition 3.30:

*Proof.* Suppose  $\alpha \in O_K$ , and let  $a_d$  be the first non-zero coefficient. We therefore have

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{p} \sum_{i=d}^{n-1} a_i \theta^i \in O_K$$

We can write this as

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{p} \left( a_d \theta^d + \theta^{d+1} \delta \right), \quad \delta \in O_K.$$

Multiplying through by  $\theta^{n-1-d}$  we still have an element of  $O_K$ :

$$\theta^{n-1-d}\alpha = \frac{a_d\theta^{n-1}}{p} + \frac{\theta^n\delta}{p} \in O_K$$

On the one hand, since f(t) satisfies Eisenstein's criterion we have

 $\theta^n = pg(\theta), \text{ for some } g(t) \in \mathbb{Z}[t].$ 

It follows that

$$\frac{a_d \theta^{n-1}}{p} + g(\theta) \delta \in O_K.$$

On the other hand since  $g(\theta)\delta \in O_K$  we have

$$\frac{a_d \theta^{n-1}}{p} \in O_K.$$

We shall calculate the norm of this to get a contradiction:

$$N\left(\frac{a_d\theta^{n-1}}{p}\right) = \frac{a_d^n N(\theta)^{n-1}}{p^n}.$$

By Lemma 3.28, we have  $N(\theta) = pr$ , where  $p \not| r$ . Hence we have

$$N\left(\frac{a_{d}\theta^{n-1}}{p}\right) = \frac{a_{d}^{n}p^{n-1}r^{n-1}}{p^{n}} = \frac{a_{d}^{n}r^{n-1}}{p}.$$

However this cannot be an integer, since neither  $a_d$  nor r is a multiple of p. This gives the contradiction.

3.3. Example: cyclotomic fields. In this section, we will use Proposition 3.30 to determine an integral basis of *cyclotomic fields*; these fields are of great importance in current research in algebraic number theory.

**Definition 3.32.** A cyclotomic field is a field of the form  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\zeta)$ , where  $\zeta$  is a primitive mth root of unity for some m.

We will specialize to the case  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\zeta)$ , where p is an odd prime. We have already seen that the minimal polynomial of  $\zeta$  over  $\mathbb{Q}$  is

$$f(t) = t^{p-1} + \dots + t + 1.$$

Let  $\lambda = \zeta - 1$ . Then the minimal polynomial of  $\lambda$  is

$$g(t) = t^{p-1} + {p \choose 1}t^{p-2} + \dots + {p \choose p-1}.$$

In particular, g(t) is Eisenstein for p.

**Lemma 3.33.** We have  $N(\zeta) = 1$  and  $N(\lambda) = p$ .

Proof. Clear.

Theorem 3.34. We have

$$\Delta[1, \lambda, \dots, \lambda^{p-2}] = (-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}} p^{p-2}$$

and  $\{1, \lambda, \ldots, \lambda^{p-2}\}$  is an integral basis in K.

*Proof.* By Proposition 2.39 we have

$$\Delta[1,\lambda,\ldots,\lambda^{p-2}] = (-1)^{\frac{(p-1)(p-2)}{2}} N(Dg(\lambda)).$$

To calculate  $N(Dg(\lambda))$ , we use a trick: recall that  $g(t) = \frac{(t+1)^p - 1}{t}$ . By the quotient rule, we have

$$Dg(t) = \frac{p(t+1)^{p-1}t - \left((t+1)^p - 1\right)}{t^2},$$

so  $Dg(\lambda) = p \frac{\zeta^{p-1}}{\lambda}$ . We deduce that

$$N(Dg(\lambda)) = N(p)N(\zeta)^{p-1}N(\lambda)^{-1} = p^{p-2}$$

by Lemma 3.33. Since p is odd, we have  $(-1)^{\frac{(p-1)(p-2)}{2}} = (-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}}$ . Hence

$$\Delta[1, \lambda, \dots, \lambda^{p-2}] = (-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}} p^{p-2}$$

as claimed.

The only prime whose square divides this is p. However g(t) satisfies Eisenstein's criterion at p, so we conclude by the same argument as in the example after Proposition 3.30.

**Remark 3.35.** If n is not prime and  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\zeta)$ , then it is still true that  $O_K = \mathbb{Z}[\zeta]$ , but the proof is harder. The degree of the extension is given by

$$[K:\mathbb{Q}] = \#(\mathbb{Z}/n)^{\times},$$

which is the same as the number of primitive n-th roots of unity in K. If  $n = p^a$  for some prime p, then  $f_{\lambda}$  still satisfies Eisenstein's criterion for the prime p, and we again use this fact to prove that  $\{\lambda^i\}$  is an integral basis. If n is not a power of a prime then  $f_{\lambda}$  does't satisfy Eisenstein's criterion, so the proof is quite different in this case.

#### 4. Factorisation in $O_K$

4.1. Units and irreducible elements in  $O_K$ . Now let K be a number field. We first study the units in  $O_K$ .

**Proposition 4.1.** An element  $x \in O_K$  is a unit if and only if |N(x)| = 1.

*Proof.* Since  $N(x) \in \mathbb{Z}$  by Proposition 3.14 and N is multiplicative, it is clear that if  $x \in O_K^{\times}$ , then |N(x)| = 1. Suppose now that N(x) = 1. (The proof when N(x) = -1 is similar.) By definition, we have

$$N(x) = \prod_{i=1}^{n} \sigma_i(x),$$

where  $\sigma_1, \ldots, \sigma_n$  are the different embeddings of K into C. Without loss of generality, assume that  $\sigma_1(x) = x$ . Then

$$N(x) = 1 \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad x \cdot (\sigma_2(x) \cdots \sigma_n(x)) = 1,$$

so  $\sigma_2(x)\cdots\sigma_n(x)=x^{-1}\in K$ . It follows that  $x\in O_K^{\times}$  if and only if  $\sigma_2(x)\cdots\sigma_n(x)\in O_K$ .

Now note that if  $\sigma_i(x)$  is an algebraic integer for all *i*, since it has the same minimal polynomial as *x*. Hence  $\sigma_2(x) \cdots \sigma_n(x)$  is an algebraic integer. But the algebraic integers in *K* are precisely the elements of  $O_K$ , so  $\sigma_2(x) \cdots \sigma_n(x) \in O_K$ , which finishes the proof.  $\Box$ 

As a corollary, let us determine  $O_K^{\times}$ , where K is an imaginary quadratic field.

**Proposition 4.2.** Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{-d})$ , where d > 0. Then

$$O_{K}^{\times} = \begin{cases} \{\pm 1, \pm i\} & \text{if } d = 1\\ \{\pm 1, \pm \omega, \pm \omega^{2} : \omega = e^{\frac{2\pi i}{3}}\} & \text{if } d = 3\\ \{\pm 1\} & \text{for any other } d > 0 \end{cases}$$

Proof. Exercise sheet.

**Remark 4.3.** You see that in this example, all the units are in fact roots of unity. This is not true in general; you will see an example on problem sheet 3.

**Remark 4.4.** It is a natural question to ask whether one can say something in general about the unit group in the ring of integers of a number field. We will return to this question later.

Suppose now that  $x \in O_K$ .

**Lemma 4.5.** If  $N(x) = \pm p$  for a prime number p then x is irreducible.

*Proof.* Suppose that x = yz for some  $y, z \in O_K$ . Then

$$N(x) = N(yz) = N(y)N(z),$$

so one of y, z must have norm of absolute value equal to 1. But any element of absolute norm equal to 1 is a unit by Proposition 4.1. Hence x is irreducible.

The following theorem shows that one can factorise any non-zero element in  $O_K$ :

**Theorem 4.6.** Let  $x \in O_K$  be non-zero. Then there is a unit  $u \in O_K^{\times}$  and irreducible elements  $\pi_1, \ldots, \pi_n$  such that

 $x = u\pi_1 \cdots \pi_n.$ 

*Proof.* We proceed by induction on |N(x)|. If |N(x)| = 1, then x is a unit by Proposition 4.1. Suppose therefore that the theorem is true for all elements  $y \in O_K$  such that |N(y)| < |N(x)|. Then there are two possibilities: if x is irreducible, then the theorem is clearly true for x. If it is not irreducible, then there exist  $y, z \in O_K$  which are not units such that x = yz. Note that Proposition 4.1 and the fact that the norm is multiplicative imply that |N(y)|, |N(z)| < |N(x)|. Hence both y and z can be factorized into irreducibles; therefore so can x.

The problem with Theorem 4.6 is that  $O_K$  does usually not have unique factorisation! However, without this fact algebraic number theory would be pretty dull.

Lecture 10

**Example 4.7.** Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{-10})$ , so  $O_K = \mathbb{Z}[\sqrt{-10}]$ . We have two different factorizations of the number 10 in  $O_K$ , namely

$$10 = 2 \times 5 = -\sqrt{-10} \times \sqrt{-10}$$

Furthermore the elements 2, 5 and  $\sqrt{-10}$  are all irreducible. To see this we calculate their norms:

N(2) = 4, N(5) = 25,  $N(\sqrt{-10}) = 10$ .

The norm of a general element of the ring is

$$N(x + y\sqrt{-10}) = x^2 + 10y^2.$$

Since this is never equal to  $\pm 2$  or  $\pm 5$ , it follows that the above elements are irreducible, and none of them is a unit multiple of another. Therefore  $O_K$  does not have unique factorization.

4.1.1. Unique factorisation in imaginary quadratic fields. The question of which imaginary quadratic fields have unique factorisation is quite subtle.

**Theorem 4.8.** Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ . Then  $O_K$  is UFD for

$$d \in \{-1, -2, -3, -7, -11\}.$$

In order to prove Theorem 4.8, we show that under these assumptions  $(O_K, |N(\sim)|)$  is a Euclidean domain. Recall Definition 1.12:

**Definition 4.9.** Let R be an integral domain, and let  $\phi : R \to \mathbb{Z}$  be a function such that  $\phi(x) \ge 0$  for all  $x \in R$ , and  $\phi(0) = 0$ . Then  $(R, \phi)$  is a Eucliden domain if the division algorithm holds: for all  $x, y \in R$ ,  $y \ne 0$ , there exist  $q, r \in R$  such that x = qy + r and either r = 0 or  $\phi(r) < \phi(y)$ .

Proof of Theorem 4.8. Claim. For  $(O_K, |N(\sim)|)$  to be a Euclidean domain, it is sufficient to prove the following statement: for all  $\alpha \in K$  there  $\gamma \in O_K$  such that

$$|N(\alpha - \gamma)| < 1.$$

Proof of claim: let  $\alpha = \frac{x}{y}$ , and take  $q = \gamma$  and r = x - qy. Then

$$N(r)| = |N((\alpha - \gamma)y)| < |N(y)|,$$

which proves the claim.

Suppose now that  $\alpha = r + s\sqrt{d} \in K$ . If  $d \not\equiv 1 \pmod{4}$  (i.e. d = -1, -2), take  $u, v \in \mathbb{Z}$  to be of minimal distance to r and s, respectively. Then

$$\left| (r-u)^2 - d(s-v)^2 \right| \le \left| \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 + 2\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 \right| < 1.$$

In the remaining three cases we have  $d \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$ , so we need to find

$$\gamma = u + v \left( \frac{1 + \sqrt{d}}{2} \right)$$
 with  $u, v \in \mathbb{Z}$ 

such that

$$\left| (r - u - \frac{1}{2}v)^2 - d(s - \frac{1}{2}v)^2 \right| < 1.$$

Take v to be the integer closest to 2s, so  $|v-2s| \leq \frac{1}{2}$ ; we can then find a  $u \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that

$$\left|r-u-\frac{1}{2}v\right| \le \frac{1}{2}.$$

For d = -3, -7, -11, this implies that

$$\left| (r - u - \frac{1}{2}v)^2 - d(s - \frac{1}{2}v)^2 \right| \le \left| \frac{1}{4} + \frac{11}{16} \right| < 1.$$

**Remark 4.10.** (1) One can show that if d < -11 is squarefree, then  $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$  is not Euclidean.

(2) We call a number field K norm-Euclidean if  $|N(\sim)|$  is a Euclidean function on K. Thanks to the work of many mathematicians, we know that there are only finitely many real-quadratic fields which are norm-Euclidean. however, unlike in the imaginary quadratic case, it is not known whether a real-quadratic field can be Euclidean but not norm-Euclidean.

Lecture 11

The main insight concerning the problem of non-unique factorisation in number fields was that the irreducible elements are not the correct analogue of the prime numbers - the right thing to do is to factorise into *maximal ideals ideals*.

### 4.2. Factorisation into ideals.

**Definition 4.11.** Let R be a ring. A subset I of R is an ideal if it satisfies the following properties:

- if  $x, y \in I$ , then  $x + y \in I$ ;
- if  $x \in I$  and  $r \in R$ , then  $rx \in I$ .

An ideal I is proper if  $I \neq R$ .

**Example 4.12.** (1) The set  $\{2x + t^2y : x, y \in \mathbb{Z}[t]\}$  is an ideal in  $\mathbb{Z}[t]$ .

(2) Let R be the ring of continuous functions  $\mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ . Then

$$\{f \in R : f(1) = 0\}$$

is an ideal of R.

**Example 4.13.** More generally, if R is a ring and  $a \in R$ , then  $\{ra : r \in R\}$  is an ideal in R. It is called the *ideal generated by* a and denoted by  $\langle a \rangle$ . An ideal I is *principal* if it is generated by one element. Similarly, if  $a_1, \ldots, a_n \in R$ , define the ideal generated by the  $a_i$  to be

$$\langle a_1, \dots, a_n \rangle = \{ r_1 a_1 + \dots + r_n a_n : r_i \in R \}.$$

Thei definition generalizes in the obvious way to the ideal generated by an infinite number of elements.

**Remark 4.14.** The ideal in example (2) above is equal to  $\langle 2, t^2 \rangle$ .

**Definition 4.15.** Let R be a ring and let I be a proper ideal of R. Then I is maximal if there is no other proper ideal J of R containing I.

**Example 4.16.** The ideal  $\langle 2 \rangle$  is maximal in  $\mathbb{Z}$ , but the ideal  $\langle 6 \rangle$  is not. More generally, if  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$  is non-zero, then  $\langle n \rangle$  is a maximal ideal if and only if n is prime.

If R is a ring, we can define define the product of two ideals.

**Definition 4.17.** Let I, J be ideals in a ring R. Define the product IJ by

$$IJ = \langle xy : x \in I, y \in J \rangle.$$

I.e. IJ is the ideal generated by products of elements of I by elements of J.

**Example 4.18.** Let  $x, y \in R$ . Then

$$\langle x \rangle \langle y \rangle = \langle xy \rangle.$$

More generally, if  $x, y, u, v \in R$ , then

$$\langle x, y \rangle \langle u, v \rangle = \langle xu, xv, yu, yv \rangle$$

**Remark 4.19.** The ideal IJ is not necessarily equal to the set  $\{xy : x \in I, y \in J\}$ : if  $R = \mathbb{Z}[t]$  and  $I = \langle 2, t \rangle$ ,  $J = \langle 3, t \rangle$ . Then  $IJ = \langle 6, t \rangle$ , even though t cannot be written of the form if with  $i \in I$  and  $j \in J$ .

Later in the course, we shall prove the following theorem, which takes the place of uniqueness of factorization of elements:

**Theorem 4.20.** Let K be a number field, and let  $I \subset O_K$  be a non-zero ideal. Then there are maximal ideals  $\mathfrak{p}_1, \ldots, \mathfrak{p}_n$  in  $O_K$  such that

 $I = \mathfrak{p}_1 \cdots \mathfrak{p}_n.$ 

Furthermore this factorisation is unique up to reordering of the factors.

**Remark 4.21.** This theorem generalizes the uniqueness of factorisation of the integers: if  $n = p_1 \cdots p_n$  for some prime numbers  $p_i$ , then

$$\langle n \rangle = \langle p_1 \rangle \cdots \langle p_n \rangle.$$

We us now see how Theorem 4.20 solves the problem of factorising the number 10 in  $\mathbb{Z}[\sqrt{-10}]$ .

Example 4.22. Consider the ideals

$$\mathfrak{p} = \langle 2, \sqrt{-10} \rangle, \quad \mathfrak{q} = \langle 5, \sqrt{-10} \rangle.$$

Then

$$\begin{split} \mathfrak{pq} &= \langle 2, \sqrt{-10} \rangle \langle 5, \sqrt{-10} \rangle \\ &= \langle 10, 2\sqrt{-10}, 5\sqrt{-10}, -10 \rangle \\ &= \langle 10, 2\sqrt{-10}, 5\sqrt{-10}, -10 \rangle \\ &= \langle 40, 2\sqrt{-10}, 5\sqrt{-10}, -10 \rangle \\ &= \langle 4, 2\sqrt{-10}, -10 \rangle \\ &= \langle 4, 2\sqrt{-10}, -10 \rangle \\ &= \langle 4, 2\sqrt{-10}, -10, 2 \rangle \\ &= \langle 2 \rangle \\ \mathfrak{q}^2 &= \langle 5, \sqrt{-10} \rangle \langle 5, \sqrt{-10} \rangle \\ &= \langle 25, 5\sqrt{-10}, -10 \rangle \\ &= \langle 25, 5\sqrt{-10}, -10, 5 \rangle \\ &= \langle 5 \rangle. \end{split}$$

So our two distinct factorizations into elements can both be refined to the same factorization into ideals:

$$\langle 10 \rangle = \langle 2 \rangle \times \langle 5 \rangle = \mathfrak{p}^2 \mathfrak{q}^2 = \langle \sqrt{-10} \rangle^2 = (\mathfrak{p}\mathfrak{q})^2$$

**Remark 4.23.** In general, if we have a number field K and  $x \in O_K$  is non-zero, then we can factorise  $\langle x \rangle$  uniquely into a product of maximal ideals,

(8) 
$$\langle x \rangle = \mathfrak{p}_1 \cdots \mathfrak{p}_n$$

We can also factorise x (not necessarily uniquely) into a product of irreducibles,

$$x = y_1 \cdots y_r,$$

which induces a factorisation into ideals

(9) 
$$\langle x \rangle = \langle y_1 \rangle \cdots \langle y_r \rangle$$

The factorisations (8) and (9) agree if and only if n = r and (after some permutation of the indices) we have  $\mathfrak{p}_i = \langle y_i \rangle$ ; i.e. the unique factorisation of  $\langle x \rangle$  into maximal ideals induces a factorisation of x into irreducibles if and only if each maximal ideal is principal.

Hence, in order to understand 'how far away' the ring  $O_K$  is from having unique factorisation into irreducibles, we need to understand 'how far away' a general ideal is from being principal. For this purpose we define the class group of K to be the group

$$\operatorname{Cl}(K)$$
" = " $\mathcal{I}(K)/\mathcal{P}(K)$ ,

where  $\mathcal{I}(K)$  is the set of ideals of K, and  $\mathcal{P}(K)$  is the set of principal ideals. (In fact these sets are semi-groups, although the quotient is a group.) The class group measure how far away  $O_K$  is from having unique factorisation into irreducibles:  $Cl_k$  is trivial if and only if  $O_K$  is a principal ideal domain, and has unique factorization. We shall prove that Cl(K) is always a finite group (i.e. the failure of unique factorisation into irreducibles is never too bad), and calculate it in a lot of examples.

(This is a vague sketch of what we are going to do. The definition of the class group does not make sense the way it is stated, because neither  $\mathcal{I}(K)$  nor  $\mathcal{P}(K)$  have the structure of a group. We will discuss this issue at a later stage.)

### 4.3. Prime ideals.

**Definition 4.24.** Let R be a ring, and let  $\mathfrak{p}$  be an ideal in R. Then  $\mathfrak{p}$  is prime if it is a proper ideal and for  $x, y \in R$ 

$$xy \in \mathfrak{p} \Rightarrow (x \in \mathfrak{p} \text{ or } y \in \mathfrak{p}).$$

**Remark 4.25.** A ring R is an integral domain if and only if (0) is a prime ideal.

We can give an alternative characterisation of a prime ideal, which is closer in spirits to the properties of prime numbers.

**Lemma 4.26.** Let  $\mathfrak{p}$  be an ideal of a ring R. Then  $\mathfrak{p}$  is prime if and only if the following condition is satisfied: if I, J are ideals of R such that  $IJ \subset \mathfrak{p}$ , then  $I \subset \mathfrak{p}$  or  $J \subset \mathfrak{p}$ .

*Proof.* Assume  $\mathfrak{p}$  is prime and suppose  $IJ \subseteq \mathfrak{p}$ . We'll assume that  $I \not\subseteq \mathfrak{p}$  and prove that  $J \subseteq \mathfrak{p}$ . Let  $x \in I \setminus \mathfrak{p}$ . For every  $y \in J$  we have  $xy \in IJ$ . Therefore  $xy \in \mathfrak{p}$ . Since  $x \notin \mathfrak{p}$  and  $\mathfrak{p}$  is prime, it follows that  $y \in \mathfrak{p}$ . Hence  $J \subseteq \mathfrak{p}$ .

Conversely, assume that  $\mathfrak{p}$  satisfies the condition and suppose  $xy \in \mathfrak{p}$ . This implies  $\langle xy \rangle \subseteq \mathfrak{p}$ . Therefore  $\langle x \rangle \langle y \rangle \subseteq \mathfrak{p}$ . By the assumption, we have  $\langle x \rangle \subseteq \mathfrak{p}$  or  $\langle y \rangle \subseteq \mathfrak{p}$ . This implies  $x \in \mathfrak{p}$  or  $y \in \mathfrak{p}$ .  $\Box$ 

**Example 4.27.** Let p be a prime number, and let  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$  be non-zero. Then p|n if and only if  $\langle n \rangle \subset \langle p \rangle$ , and the fundamental property of primes numbers

 $p|mn \Rightarrow p|m \text{ or } p|n$ 

is equivalent to the statement of Lemma 4.26.

Recall that if I is an ideal in a ring R, then we can look at the quotient ring R/I:

**Definition 4.28.** The elements of R/I are the cosets of I in R. Addition and multiplication are defined as follows:

$$(a + I) + (b + I) = a + b + I$$
  
 $(a + I)(b + I) = ab + I.$ 

The unit element in R/I is the coset 1 + I.

**Lemma 4.29.** Let  $\mathfrak{p}$  be an ideal in a ring R. Then

- $\mathfrak{p}$  is a maximal ideal if and only if  $R/\mathfrak{p}$  is a field.
  - $\mathfrak{p}$  is a prime ideal if and only if  $R/\mathfrak{p}$  is an integral domain.

*Proof.* Problem sheet 4.

**Corollary 4.30.** Every maximal ideal is prime.

*Proof.* Since every field is an integral domain, this shows that  $\mathfrak{p}$  is prime.

**Warning 1.** The converse of Corollary 4.30 is false! For example if R is an integral domain but not a field, then (0) is a prime ideal but is not maximal.

However, we have a partial converse to Corollary 4.30.

**Proposition 4.31.** Let  $\mathfrak{p}$  be a prime ideal in a ring R, and suppose that  $R/\mathfrak{p}$  is finite. Then  $\mathfrak{p}$  is maximal.

*Proof.* Proposition 4.31 follows immediately from Lemma 4.29 and the fact that a finite integral domain is a field: Let A be a finite integral domain, and let  $x \in A$  be non-zero. We have to show that there exists  $y \in A$  such that xy = 1. Consider the map  $\times x : A \to A$ . As A is an integral domain, the map is injective. As A is finite, this implies that the map is also surjective, so there exists  $y \in A$  such that xy = 1.

We now return to the case when  $R = O_K$  for some number field K.

**Proposition 4.32.** If a is any non-zero ideal in  $O_K$ , then  $O_K/\mathfrak{a}$  is finite.

Before we prove this, we note the following consequence:

**Corollary 4.33.** Every non-zero prime ideal in  $O_K$  is maximal.

*Proof.* Immediate from Propositions 4.31 and 4.32.

We now prove Proposition 4.32.

*Proof.* Let  $\mathfrak{a}$  be a non-zero ideal, and choose a non-zero element  $x \in \mathfrak{a}$ . Let N = N(x). Let  $\sigma_1 = \mathrm{id}, \sigma_2, \ldots, \sigma_n$  be the embeddings of K into  $\mathbb{C}$ . By definition, we have

$$N(x) = x\sigma_2(x)\cdots\sigma_n(x) \in \mathbb{Z} \subset O_K.$$

As  $x \in \mathfrak{a} \subset O_K$ , we have  $\sigma_2(x) \cdots \sigma_n(x) \in O_K$ , which - by the property of an ideal - implies that  $N \in \mathfrak{a}$ , and hence  $\langle N \rangle \subseteq \mathfrak{a}$ . It follows that we have a quotient map (which is surjective by construction)

$$O_K/\langle N \rangle \to O_K/\mathfrak{a},$$

which identifies  $O_K/\mathfrak{a}$  with a quotient of  $O_K/\langle N \rangle$ . Now the fact the  $O_K$  has an integral basis implies that  $O_K \cong \mathbb{Z}^n$  as an additive group (here  $n = [K : \mathbb{Q}]$ ), so

$$O_K/\langle N \rangle \cong (\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})^n,$$

which is finite, which implies that  $O_K/\mathfrak{a}$  is finite as well.

**Definition 4.34.** Let K be a number field, and let  $\mathfrak{a}$  be a non-zero ideal in  $O_K$ . Define the norm of  $\mathfrak{a}$  to be  $N(\mathfrak{a}) = |O_K/\mathfrak{a}|$ . This is finite by Proposition 4.32.

**Remark 4.35.** We will return later to the question of how to calculate the norm of an ideal. Before that, we want to prove Theorem 4.20.

4.4. Uniqueness of Factorization into ideals. The aim of this section is the proof of Theorem 4.20, which states that if K is a number field, then every non-zero ideal in  $O_K$  has a unique factorisation into maximal ideals. We start by recalling the following definition.

**Definition 4.36.** A ring R is called a Noetherian ring if it satisfies the following condition (called the ascending chain condition): For every ascending sequence of ideals of R:

 $I_1 \subseteq I_2 \subseteq \ldots,$ 

there is an  $N \in \mathbb{N}$  such that

$$I_N=I_{N+1}=I_{N+1}=\ldots,$$

i.e. every ascending chain of ideals stabilizes eventually.

**Lemma 4.37.** Let K be any number field. Then  $O_K$  is noetherian.

*Proof.* If we have a sequence of (non-zero) ideals

 $\mathfrak{a}_1 \subseteq \mathfrak{a}_2 \subseteq \ldots,$ 

then by the 3rd isomorphism theorem, we have an isomorphism of additive groups:

$$O_K/\mathfrak{a}_{i+1} \cong (O_K/\mathfrak{a}_i)/(\mathfrak{a}_{i+1}/\mathfrak{a}_i).$$

for all  $i \geq 1$ . Hence

(10)  $N(\mathfrak{a}_{i+1}) = N(\mathfrak{a}_i)/|\mathfrak{a}_{i+1}/\mathfrak{a}_i|.$ (Note that  $|\mathfrak{a}_{i+1}/\mathfrak{a}_i| < \infty$  since  $\mathfrak{a}_{i+1}/\mathfrak{a}_i \subset O_K/\mathfrak{a}_i$  and  $O_K/\mathfrak{a}_i$  is finite by Proposition 4.32.) It follows

that  $N(\mathfrak{a}_{i+1}) < N(\mathfrak{a}_i)$  with equality if and only if  $\mathfrak{a}_{i+1} = \mathfrak{a}_i$ . Hence we have a decreasing sequence of natural numbers:  $N(\mathfrak{a}_1) \ge N(\mathfrak{a}_2) \ge \dots$ 

Clearly there is an N such that

 $N(\mathfrak{a}_N) = N(\mathfrak{a}_{N+1}) = \dots,$ 

so  $\mathfrak{a}_N = \mathfrak{a}_{N+1} = \dots$ 

**Remark 4.38.** If R is a Noetherian ring then there is a strategy for proving results about ideals of R as follows: assume that the result if false, and suppose  $I_1$  is a counterexample. We call  $I_1$  a maximal counterexample if every ideal containing  $I_1$  satisfies the theorem. If  $I_1$  is not a maximal counterexample then choose a bigger counterexample  $I_2$ . If  $I_2$  is not a maximal counterexample then choose a bigger counterexample  $I_3$  etc. In this way we obtain a sequence of ideals which must end in a maximal counterexample. So we may always assume that if a theorem about ideals is false then there is a maximal counterexample.

An example of this method is the following:

**Lemma 4.39.** Let  $\mathfrak{a} \subseteq O_K$  be a non-zero ideal. Then there are maximal ideals  $\mathfrak{p}_1, \ldots, \mathfrak{p}_r$  such that

$$\mathfrak{p}_1 \cdots \mathfrak{p}_r \subseteq \mathfrak{a}.$$

*Proof.* Suppose not and let  $\mathfrak{a}$  be a maximal counterexample. Clearly  $\mathfrak{a}$  is not a maximal ideal; otherwise we could take  $\mathfrak{p}_1 = \mathfrak{a}$ . Since  $\mathfrak{a}$  is non-zero, we know that  $\mathfrak{a}$  is not prime. By Lemma 4.26, it follows that there are ideals  $\mathfrak{b}, \mathfrak{c}$  such that  $\mathfrak{bc} \subset \mathfrak{a}$  but neither  $\mathfrak{b}$  nor  $\mathfrak{c}$  is a subset of  $\mathfrak{a}$ . By replacing  $\mathfrak{b}$  and  $\mathfrak{c}$  by

$$\begin{split} \langle \mathfrak{b}, \mathfrak{a} \rangle &= \{ b + a : b \in \mathfrak{b}, a \in \mathfrak{a} \} \\ \langle \mathfrak{c}, \mathfrak{a} \rangle &= \{ c + a : c \in \mathfrak{c}, a \in \mathfrak{a} \} \end{split}$$

Lecture 13

we may assume that  $\mathfrak{b}$  and  $\mathfrak{c}$  both contain  $\mathfrak{a}$ . By the maximality of our counterexample, it follows that we can find maximal ideals  $\mathfrak{p}_1, \ldots, \mathfrak{p}_r$  and  $\mathfrak{q}_1, \ldots, \mathfrak{q}_s$  such that

$$\mathfrak{p}_1 \cdots \mathfrak{p}_r \subseteq \mathfrak{b}, \quad \mathfrak{q}_1 \cdots \mathfrak{q}_s \subseteq \mathfrak{c}.$$

Hence

$$\mathfrak{p}_1\cdots\mathfrak{p}_r\mathfrak{q}_1\cdots\mathfrak{q}_s\subseteq\mathfrak{bc}\subseteq I\mathfrak{a}_s$$

which gives the required contradiction.

We also need the following technical lemma:

**Lemma 4.40.** Let  $\mathfrak{a}$  be a non-zero ideal of  $O_K$ . If  $x \in K$  satisfies  $x\mathfrak{a} \subset \mathfrak{a}$  then  $x \in O_K$ .

*Proof.* Recall that  $O_K$  is a free finitely generated  $\mathbb{Z}$ -module. Hence  $\mathfrak{a} \subset O_K$  is also a finitely generated free  $\mathbb{Z}$ -module<sup>1</sup>, say

$$\mathfrak{a} = \operatorname{Span}_{\mathbb{Z}} \{ \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_r \}.$$

Multiplication by x takes  $\mathfrak{a}$  to  $\mathfrak{a}$ , so we have

$$x\alpha_i = \sum_{j=1}^n c_{i,j}\alpha_j, \quad c_{i,j} \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

Hence if we let  $C = \{c_{i,j}\}$ , then

$$(C - xI_r) \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1 \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_r \end{pmatrix} = 0$$

This means that x is an eigenvalue of C and hence a root of the polynomial  $f(t) = \det(tI_r - C)$ , so is an algebraic integer.

**Definition 4.41.** A fractional ideal of  $O_K$  is a subset of the form  $c^{-1}\mathfrak{a}$ , where  $\mathfrak{a}$  is an ideal in  $O_K$  and  $c \in O_K$  is non-zero.

**Example 4.42.** For any  $r \in \mathbb{Q}$ ,  $r\mathbb{Z}$  is a fractional ideal of  $\mathbb{Z}$ . However, the set

$$\{\frac{n}{5^m}:n\in\mathbb{Z},m\geq 0\}$$

is not a fractional ideal of  $\mathbb{Z}$ .

**Lemma 4.43.** (i) Every ideal in  $O_K$  is a fractional ideal.

(ii) A subset  $\mathfrak{b}$  of K is a fractional ideal if and only if (a) if  $x, y \in \mathfrak{b}$ , then  $x + y \in \mathfrak{b}$  ( $\mathfrak{b}$  is closed under addition), (b)  $\mathfrak{b}O_K \subset \mathfrak{b}$ , and (c) there exists  $c \in O_K$  such that  $c\mathfrak{b} \subseteq O_K$ .

*Proof.* (i) is clear. (ii) is on Course work 4.

Note 4.44. It is in fact clear that  $\mathfrak{b}O_K = \mathfrak{b}$ .

**Lemma 4.45.** If  $\mathfrak{b}$  and  $\mathfrak{c}$  are fractional ideals in K, then

$$\mathfrak{bc} = \{x_1y_1 + \dots + x_ny_n : x_i \in \mathfrak{b}, y_i \in \mathfrak{c}\}$$

is a fractional ideal.

*Proof.* By definition, there exist ideals  $\mathfrak{a}$ ,  $\mathfrak{d}$  in  $O_K$  and non-zero elements  $b, c \in O_K$  such that  $\mathfrak{b} = b^{-1}\mathfrak{a}$ and  $\mathfrak{c} = d^{-1}\mathfrak{d}$ . By definition,  $\mathfrak{b}\mathfrak{c} = (bc)^{-1}\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{d}$ , so  $\mathfrak{b}\mathfrak{c}$  is a fractional ideal.

**Definition 4.46.** Let  $\mathfrak{a}$  be a non-zero ideal in  $O_K$ . Define

$$\mathfrak{a}^{-1} = \{ x \in K : x\mathfrak{a} \subseteq O_K \}.$$

**Example 4.47.** Let  $\mathfrak{a} = \langle 2 \rangle$  in  $\mathbb{Z}$ . Then

$$\mathfrak{a}^{-1} = \frac{1}{2}\mathbb{Z}.$$

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>of the same rank, as  $O_K/\mathfrak{a}$  is finite by Proposition 4.32

**Example 4.48.** Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{6})$ , so  $O_K = \mathbb{Z}[\sqrt{6}]$ , i.e.  $1, \sqrt{6}$  is an integral basis of K. Let  $\mathfrak{p} = \langle 2, \sqrt{6} \rangle$ . Then

$$\mathfrak{p}^{-1} = \left\{ \alpha : \alpha \mathfrak{p} \subset \mathbb{Z}[\sqrt{6}] \right\}$$
$$= \left\{ x + y\sqrt{6} : x, y \in \mathbb{Q}, (x + y\sqrt{6})\langle 2, \sqrt{6} \rangle \subset \mathbb{Z}[\sqrt{6}] \right\}$$
$$= \left\{ x + y\sqrt{6} : x, y \in \mathbb{Q}, 2(x + y\sqrt{6}) \in \mathbb{Z}[\sqrt{6}] \quad \text{and} \quad \sqrt{6}(x + y\sqrt{6}) \in \mathbb{Z}[\sqrt{6}] \right\}$$
$$= \left\{ x + y\sqrt{6} : x, y \in \mathbb{Q}, 2x \in \mathbb{Z}, 2y \in \mathbb{Z}, x \in \mathbb{Z}, 6y \in \mathbb{Z} \right\}$$
$$= \left\{ x + y\sqrt{6} : x \in \mathbb{Z}, 2y \in \mathbb{Z} \right\}.$$

**Example 4.49.** We have  $O_K^{-1} = O_K$ .

**Remark 4.50.** (i) If  $\mathfrak{a} \subset \mathfrak{b}$ , then  $\mathfrak{b}^{-1} \subset \mathfrak{a}^{-1}$ . (ii) It is clear from the definition that  $O_K \subset \mathfrak{a}^{-1}$ .

**Lemma 4.51.** If  $\mathfrak{a}$  is any non-zero ideal in  $O_K$ , then  $\mathfrak{a}^{-1}$  is a fractional ideal. Moreover, if  $\mathfrak{a} \neq O_K$ , then  $\mathfrak{a}^{-1} \neq O_K$  (i.e.  $\mathfrak{a}^{-1}$  is strictly bigger than  $O_K$ ).

*Proof.* Let  $c \in \mathfrak{a}$  be non-zero. Then  $c\mathfrak{a}^{-1} \subset O_K$ , and  $\mathfrak{a}^{-1}$  is clearly closed under addition and under multiplication by  $O_K$ , so  $\mathfrak{a}^{-1}$  is a fractional ideal by Lemma 4.43 (ii).

Suppose now that  $\mathfrak{a} \neq O_K$ . By Remark 4.50, it is sufficient to prove that  $\mathfrak{a}^{-1} \not\subset O_K$  when  $\mathfrak{a}$  is maximal. Let  $c \in \mathfrak{a} \setminus \{0\}$ . Then by Lemma 4.39, there exist prime ideals  $\mathfrak{p}_i$  such that  $(c) \supseteq \mathfrak{p}_1 \cdots \mathfrak{p}_r$ . We take r to be as small as possible. As  $\mathfrak{a} \supset (c)$ , it follows that  $\mathfrak{a} \supseteq \mathfrak{p}_1 \cdots \mathfrak{p}_r$ . Since  $\mathfrak{a}$  is maximal (and hence prime), it follows that there exists i such that  $\mathfrak{a} \supset \mathfrak{p}_i$ . Since  $\mathfrak{p}_i$  is maximal by Corollary 4.33, we know that in fact  $\mathfrak{a} = \mathfrak{p}_i$ . Without loss of generality i = 1.

There are now two cases:

(1) r = 1: then

$$\mathfrak{a} = (c) = \mathfrak{p}_1,$$

so  $\mathfrak{a}^{-1} = c^{-1} \cdot O_K$ , which is clearly bigger than  $O_K$  since c is not a unit.

(2) r > 1: Since r was chosen to be minimal, we know that  $(c) \not\supseteq \mathfrak{p}_2 \cdots \mathfrak{p}_r$ , so we can choose a  $b \in \mathfrak{p}_2 \cdots \mathfrak{p}_r \setminus (c)$ . We'll show that  $\frac{b}{c} \in \mathfrak{a}^{-1} \setminus O_K$ . First note that

$$(b)\mathfrak{a} \subset \mathfrak{p}_1 \cdots \mathfrak{p}_r \subset (c).$$

As  $(c) = cO_K$ , this shows that  $\frac{b}{c}\mathfrak{a} \subset O_K$  and hence  $\frac{b}{c} \in \mathfrak{a}^{-1}$  by definition. As  $b \notin (c)$ , we have  $\frac{b}{c} \notin O_K$ , which finishes the proof.

**Proposition 4.52.** Let  $\mathfrak{p}$  be any maximal ideal in  $O_K$ . Then  $\mathfrak{p}\mathfrak{p}^{-1} = \mathfrak{p}^{-1}\mathfrak{p} = O_K$ .

*Proof.* Clearly  $\mathfrak{p}^{-1}\mathfrak{p} \subset O_K$  by definition of  $\mathfrak{p}^{-1}$ . Therefore  $\mathfrak{p}^{-1}\mathfrak{p}$  is an (integral) ideal. On the other hand, since  $O_K \subset \mathfrak{p}^{-1}$  by Remark 4.50 it follows that  $\mathfrak{p} \subseteq \mathfrak{p}^{-1}\mathfrak{p}$ . By maximality of  $\mathfrak{p}$  we have either  $\mathfrak{p}^{-1}\mathfrak{p} = O_K$  or  $\mathfrak{p}^{-1}\mathfrak{p} = \mathfrak{p}$ . If the latter is the case then we have  $\mathfrak{p}^{-1} \subset O_K$  by Lemma 4.40, but this contradicts Lemma 4.51.

We can now prove Theorem 4.20.

*Proof.* Suppose that the statement of the theorem is not true, and let  $\mathfrak{a}$  be a maximal counterexample in the sense of Remark 4.38. Clearly  $\mathfrak{a}$  is not a maximal ideal, and hence not prime. On the other hand  $\mathfrak{a}$  is contained in some maximal ideal  $\mathfrak{p}$ . As  $O_K \subset \mathfrak{p}^{-1}$  by Remark 4.50, we have

$$\mathfrak{a} \subset \mathfrak{p}^{-1}\mathfrak{a} \subset \mathfrak{p}^{-1}\mathfrak{p} = O_K.$$

Hence  $\mathfrak{p}^{-1}\mathfrak{a}$  is an (integral) ideal containing  $\mathfrak{a}$ . Furthermore,  $\mathfrak{p}^{-1}\mathfrak{a} \neq \mathfrak{a}$ , since otherwise we would have  $\mathfrak{p}^{-1} \subset O_K$  by Lemma 4.40. Since  $\mathfrak{a}$  was chosen to be a maximal counterexample, it follows that  $\mathfrak{p}^{-1}\mathfrak{a}$  can be factorized into prime ideals:

$$\mathfrak{p}^{-1}\mathfrak{a}=\mathfrak{p}_1\cdots\mathfrak{p}_r.$$

Hence by Proposition 4.52, we have

$$\mathfrak{a}=\mathfrak{p}\mathfrak{p}_1\cdots\mathfrak{p}_r,$$

which gives a contradiction. Hence every non-zero ideal can be factorised into a product of maximal ideals. It remains to show that the factorisation is unique. Suppose that

$$\mathfrak{p}_1\cdots\mathfrak{p}_r=\mathfrak{q}_1\cdots\mathfrak{q}_s.$$

Lecture 14

Clearly  $\mathfrak{p}_1 \cdots \mathfrak{p}_r \subseteq \mathfrak{q}_1$ . Since  $\mathfrak{q}_1$  is prime it follows that  $\mathfrak{p}_i \subset \mathfrak{q}_1$  for some *i*. After reordering we may assume i = 1. By maximality of  $\mathfrak{p}_1$  we have  $\mathfrak{p}_1 = \mathfrak{q}_1$ . Multiplying both sides by  $\mathfrak{p}^{-1}$  we have

$$\mathfrak{p}_2\cdots\mathfrak{p}_r=\mathfrak{q}_2\cdots\mathfrak{q}_s.$$

We can now proceed by induction.

In view of Theorem 4.20, it is natural to make the following definition:

**Definition 4.53.** Let  $\mathfrak{a}, \mathfrak{b}$  be ideals of  $O_K$ . Then  $\mathfrak{a}$  is a factor of  $\mathfrak{b}$  (write  $\mathfrak{a}|\mathfrak{b}$ ) if there is an ideal  $\mathfrak{c}$  such that  $\mathfrak{b} = \mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{c}$ .

**Corollary 4.54.** If  $\mathfrak{a}, \mathfrak{b}$  are ideals in  $O_K$ , then  $\mathfrak{a}|\mathfrak{b}$  if and only if  $\mathfrak{a} \supseteq \mathfrak{b}$ .

*Proof.* If  $\mathfrak{b} = \mathfrak{ac}$ , then it is clear that  $\mathfrak{b} \subseteq \mathfrak{a}$ . Conversely suppose that  $\mathfrak{b} \subseteq \mathfrak{a}$ . Then there is a fractional ideal  $\mathfrak{c}$  such that  $\mathfrak{b} = \mathfrak{ac}$ . Since  $\mathfrak{ac} = \mathfrak{b} \subseteq \mathfrak{a}$  it follows from Lemma 4.40 that  $\mathfrak{c} \subseteq O_K$ , so  $\mathfrak{c}$  is an ideal.  $\Box$ 

We can summarize the properties of the fractional ideals as follows:

**Proposition 4.55.** The non-zero fractional ideals of  $O_K$  form an abelian group under multiplication; the identity element is the trivial ideal  $O_K$ . We denote this group by  $\mathcal{I}(K)$ .

In order to prove this proposition, we need the following lemma:

**Lemma 4.56.** If  $\mathfrak{a}$  is a non-zero ideal of  $O_K$ , we have  $\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{a}^{-1} = O_K$ . Moreover, if  $\mathfrak{a}$  factorises as

$$\mathfrak{a} = \mathfrak{p}_1 \cdots \mathfrak{p}'_n$$

where the  $p_i$  are maximal, then

$$\mathfrak{a}^{-1} = \mathfrak{p}_1^{-1} \cdots \mathfrak{p}_n^{-1}$$

*Proof.* Suppose that there exists a non-zero ideal  $\mathfrak{a}$  such that  $\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{a}^{-1} \neq O_K$ . Assume that  $\mathfrak{a}$  is a maximal Lecture 15 counterexample. Let  $\mathfrak{p}$  be a maximal ideal such that  $\mathfrak{a} \subset \mathfrak{p}$ . The

$$O_K \subset \mathfrak{p}^{-1} \subseteq \mathfrak{a}^{-1},$$
  
$$\Rightarrow \quad \mathfrak{a} \subseteq \mathfrak{a} \mathfrak{p}^{-1} \subseteq \mathfrak{a} \mathfrak{a}^{-1} \subseteq O_K.$$

In particular, the fact that  $\mathfrak{ap}^{-1} \subseteq O_K$  inplies that  $\mathfrak{ap}^{-1}$  is an ideal. Now we cannot have  $\mathfrak{a} = \mathfrak{ap}^{-1}$  by Lemma 4.40 and Lemma 4.51. Hence  $\mathfrak{a} \subsetneq \mathfrak{ap}^{-1}$ , and the maximality condition on  $\mathfrak{a}$  implies that

$$\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{p}^{-1}(\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{p}^{-1})^{-1} = O_K.$$

By the definition of  $\mathfrak{a}^{-1}$ , this means that

$$\mathfrak{p}^{-1}(\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{p}^{-1})^{-1} \subseteq \mathfrak{a}^{-1},$$

 $\mathbf{SO}$ 

$$O_K = \mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{p}^{-1}(\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{p}^{-1})^{-1} \subseteq \mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{a}^{-1} \subseteq O_K$$

from which the result follows.

Suppose now that  $\mathfrak{a} = \mathfrak{p}_1 \cdots \mathfrak{p}'_n$ . Multiplying both sides with  $\mathfrak{a}^{-1}\mathfrak{p}_1^{-1}\cdots \mathfrak{p}_n^{-1}$  and using that

$$\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{a}^{-1} = \mathfrak{p}_1\mathfrak{p}_1^{-1} = \cdots = \mathfrak{p}_n\mathfrak{p}_n^{-1} = O_n$$

 $\mathfrak{a}^{-1} = \mathfrak{p}_1^{-1} \cdots \mathfrak{p}_n^{-1}.$ 

we deduce that

We can now prove Proposition 4.55.

*Proof.* By Lemma 4.45, the product of two fractional ideals is a fractional ideal, and multiplication is clearly associative, with  $O_K$  being the identity element. Hence we just have to show that every element has an inverse. Note that by Lemma 4.56, every ideal has a multiplicative inverse.

Let  $\mathfrak{a}$  be a fractional ideal. There is an  $x \in O_K$  such that  $(x)\mathfrak{a}$  is an ideal. By Theorem 4.20 we have  $(x)\mathfrak{a} = \mathfrak{p}_1 \cdots \mathfrak{p}_r$  for some maximal ideals  $\mathfrak{p}_1, \ldots, \mathfrak{p}_r$ . We can also factorise (x) as

$$(x) = \mathfrak{q}_1 \cdots \mathfrak{q}_d$$

for some maximal ideals  $q_i$ . Using Proposition 4.52, we see that

$$\mathfrak{a} = \mathfrak{q}_1^{-1} \cdots \mathfrak{q}_s^{-1} \mathfrak{p}_1 \cdots \mathfrak{p}_r,$$

so if we put

$$\mathfrak{a}^{-1} = \mathfrak{q}_1 \cdots \mathfrak{q}_s \mathfrak{p}_1^{-1} \cdots \mathfrak{p}_r^{-1},$$

then  $\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{a}^{-1} = \mathfrak{a}^{-1}\mathfrak{a} = O_K$ . (Note that the definition of  $\mathfrak{a}^{-1}$  for a fractional ideal agrees reduces to the formula in Lemma 4.56 when  $\mathfrak{a}$  is an ideal.)

4.5. The norm of ideals. We now want to develop some algorithms for factorising ideals in practise. We start by learning how to calculate the norm of an ideal. Recall the definition: if  $\mathfrak{a}$  is a non-zero ideal in  $O_K$ , define  $N(\mathfrak{a}) = |O_K/\mathfrak{a}|$ . We first collect some properties of the norm.

**Lemma 4.57.** Let  $\mathfrak{a}$  be a non-zero ideal in  $O_K$ . Then  $N(\mathfrak{a}) \subset \mathfrak{a}$ , i.e.  $\mathfrak{a}|\langle N(\mathfrak{a}) \rangle$ .

Proof. Course work 4.

As a corollary, we obtain the following result:

**Proposition 4.58.** Let K be a number field. For any given positive integer n, there are only finitely many ideals in  $O_K$  of norm n.

*Proof.* It follows from Lemma 4.57 that if  $N(\mathfrak{a}) = n$ , then  $\langle n \rangle \subseteq \mathfrak{a}$ , i.e.  $\mathfrak{a} |\langle n \rangle$  by Corollary 4.54. Now  $\langle n \rangle$  factorises as

$$\langle n \rangle = \mathfrak{p}_1 \cdots \mathfrak{p}_k,$$

so  $\mathfrak{a}$  must factorise as the product of some of the  $\mathfrak{p}_i$ .

**Remark 4.59.** We will learn later how to determine all the ideals of a given norm. However, we first need to develop some tools for calculating the norm of an ideal.

**Proposition 4.60.** If  $\mathfrak{a}, \mathfrak{b}$  are any two non-zero ideals in  $O_K$ , then

$$N(\mathfrak{ab}) = N(\mathfrak{a})N(\mathfrak{b}).$$

*Proof.* Since  $\mathfrak{b}$  may be factorized into maximal ideals, it is sufficient to prove this in the case when  $\mathfrak{b}$  is maximal. We have an isomorphism of additive groups:

$$O_K/\mathfrak{a} \cong (O_K/\mathfrak{ab})/(\mathfrak{a}/\mathfrak{ab})$$

Hence

$$N(\mathfrak{a}) = N(\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b})/|\mathfrak{a}/\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b}|.$$

It is therefore sufficient to show that

$$N(\mathfrak{b}) = |\mathfrak{a}/\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b}|.$$

Choose  $\alpha \in \mathfrak{a} \setminus \mathfrak{ab}$  and consider the map

 $\Phi: O_K \to \mathfrak{a}/\mathfrak{ab}, \quad \Phi(x) = \alpha x + \mathfrak{ab}.$ 

We claim that this map induces an isomorphism

$$O_K/\mathfrak{b}\cong\mathfrak{a}/\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b}$$

Since  $\mathfrak{b}$  is maximal, there are no ideals between  $\mathfrak{a}$  and  $\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b}$ . Hence  $\mathfrak{a}$  is generated by  $\alpha$  and  $\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b}$  and  $\Phi$  is surjective. On the other hand if  $x \in \mathfrak{b}$  then  $\alpha x \in \mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b}$ , so  $\Phi(x) = 0 + \mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b}$ . This shows that  $\mathfrak{b} \subset \ker(\Phi)$ . Since  $\mathfrak{b}$  is maximal, the kernel is either  $\mathfrak{b}$  or  $O_K$ . However  $\Phi(1) = \alpha + \mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b} \neq 0 + \mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b}$ , so  $\ker(\Phi) = \mathfrak{b}$ . It follows from the first isomorphism theorem that there is an isomorphism of additive groups

$$O_K/\mathfrak{b} \cong \mathfrak{a}/\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b}$$

Hence  $N(\mathfrak{b}) = |\mathfrak{a}/\mathfrak{a}\mathfrak{b}|$ , which finishes the proof.

Now recall the following theorem proved in another course:

**Theorem 4.61.** Let H be a subgroup of  $\mathbb{Z}^d$  such that  $|\mathbb{Z}^d/H| < \infty$ . Then there exist  $c_1, \ldots, c_d \in \mathbb{Z}^d$  linearly independent such that

$$H = \operatorname{Span}_{\mathbb{Z}}\{c_1, \dots, c_d\}$$

Furthermore  $|\mathbb{Z}^d/H| = |\det(c_1,\ldots,c_d)|.$ 

**Corollary 4.62.** Suppose that K is a number field of degree n. Let  $\mathfrak{a}$  be a non-zero ideal in  $O_K$ . Then there exist  $a_1, \ldots, a_n$  such that  $\mathfrak{a} = \operatorname{Span}_{\mathbb{Z}}(a_1, \ldots, a_n).$ 

We call  $a_1, \ldots, a_n$  a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis of  $\mathfrak{a}$ .

**Warning 2.** A  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis of an ideal is not the same as a set of generators!

**Example 4.63.** Consider the ideal  $\langle 2 \rangle$  in  $\mathbb{Z}[\sqrt{3}]$ . Then 2,  $2\sqrt{3}$  is a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis of  $\langle 2 \rangle$ .

**Example 4.64.** Consider the ideal  $\mathfrak{p} = \langle 2, 1 - \sqrt{-17} \rangle$  in  $\mathbb{Z}[\sqrt{-17}]$ . By definition, the elements of  $\mathfrak{p}$  are of the form  $2(a + b\sqrt{-17}) + (1 - \sqrt{-17})(c + d\sqrt{-17})$ , where  $a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Now

$$2(a+b\sqrt{-17}) + (1-\sqrt{-17})(c+d\sqrt{-17}) = (2a+c+17d) + (2b-c+d)\sqrt{-17})$$
$$= r + s\sqrt{-17},$$

where  $r - s \in 2\mathbb{Z}$ , so  $r \equiv s \pmod{2}$ . Clearly r can be any integer, and s can be any integer of the same parity as r. It follows that

$$\mathfrak{p} = \{r + s\sqrt{-17} : r, s \in \mathbb{Z}, \ r \equiv s \pmod{2}\} \\ = \{r + (r + 2c)\sqrt{-17} : r, c \in \mathbb{Z}\} \\ = \{r(1 + \sqrt{-17}) + 2c\sqrt{-17} : r, c \in \mathbb{Z}\},\$$

so  $1 + \sqrt{-17}, 2\sqrt{-17}$  is a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis of  $\mathfrak{p}$ .

**Proposition 4.65.** Let  $\mathfrak{a}$  be a non-zero ideal in  $O_K$  and let  $a_n, \ldots, a_n$  be a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis of  $\mathfrak{a}$ . Let  $b_1, \ldots, b_n$  be an integral basis of  $O_K$ . Let M be the change-of-basis matrix from  $a_1, \ldots, a_n$  to  $b_1, \ldots, b_n$ . Then

$$N(\mathfrak{a}) = |\det(M)| = \sqrt{\frac{\Delta[a_1, \dots, a_n]}{\Delta[b_1, \dots, b_n]}}.$$

*Proof.* By Theorem 4.61, we have

$$N(\mathfrak{a}) = |O_K/\mathfrak{a}| = |\det M|.$$

On the other hand, we have  $\Delta[a_1, \ldots, a_n] = (\det M)^2 \Delta[b_1, \ldots, b_n]$  by Corollary 2.32, which implies the result.

**Example 4.66.** Let  $\mathfrak{p}$  be as in the example above. What is  $N(\mathfrak{p})$ ? We know that  $1, \sqrt{-17}$  is an integral basis of  $\mathbb{Z}[\sqrt{-17}]$ . The base-change matrix from  $1, \sqrt{-17}$  to  $1 + \sqrt{-17}, 2\sqrt{-17}$  is

$$M = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

so by Proposition 4.65, we have

$$N(\mathfrak{p}) = |\det(M)| = 2.$$

We can also see this directly: if  $x \in O_K - \mathfrak{p}$ , then  $x = r + s\sqrt{-17}$ , where  $r \not\equiv s \pmod{2}$ , so  $x + 1 \in \mathfrak{p}$ . It follows that  $O_K/\mathfrak{p}$  has two elements, i.e.  $N(\mathfrak{p}) = 2$ .

Proposition 4.65 has the following useful consequence:

**Corollary 4.67.** For any non-zero element  $a \in O_K$ , we have  $N(\langle a \rangle) = |N(a)|$ .

Proof. Course work 5.

**Example 4.68.** Let  $\sigma : K \hookrightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is an embedding, and suppose that  $\sigma(K) = K$ . Clearly  $\sigma$  restricts to a map  $O_K \to O_K$  and maps ideals to ideals. It follows that if  $\mathfrak{a}$  is an ideal then

$$N(\sigma\mathfrak{a}) = |O_K/\sigma\mathfrak{a}| = |(O_K/\sigma\mathfrak{a})| = |\sigma(O_K/\mathfrak{a})| = |O_k/\mathfrak{a}| = N(\mathfrak{a}).$$

For example, if  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{-3})$ , then

$$N(\langle 2, 1+\sqrt{3}\rangle) = N(\langle 2, 1-\sqrt{3}\rangle).$$

Hence

$$N(\langle 2, 1+\sqrt{3} \rangle)^{2} = N(\langle 2, 1+\sqrt{3} \rangle)N(\langle 2, 1-\sqrt{3} \rangle)$$
  
=  $N(\langle 2, 1+\sqrt{3} \rangle \langle 2, 1-\sqrt{3} \rangle)$   
=  $N(\langle 4, 2+2\sqrt{3}, 2-2\sqrt{3}, -2 \rangle)$   
=  $N(\langle 2 \rangle)$   
= 4,

and so  $N(\langle 2, 1 + \sqrt{3} \rangle) = 2$ . We can often use this method to calculate norms.

Lecture 16

4.6. The norm of prime ideals. Let K be a number field, and let  $\mathfrak{a} \subset O_K$  be a non-zero ideal. Then we can factorise  $\mathfrak{a}$  as a product of prime ideals,

$$\mathfrak{a} = \mathfrak{p}_1 \cdots \mathfrak{p}_n.$$

As the norm is multipliciative, we have

$$N(\mathfrak{a}) = N(\mathfrak{p}_1) \cdots N(\mathfrak{p}_n)$$

The aim of this chapter is to develop some tools for calculating the norm of prime ideals. We start with the following elementary observation:

**Lemma 4.69.** Let  $R \subset S$  be commutative rings with 1 and let  $\mathfrak{p}$  be a prime ideal of S. Then  $\mathfrak{p} \cap R$  is a prime ideal of R.

*Proof.* Immediate from the definition.

**Definition 4.70.** Suppose now that  $\mathfrak{p}$  is a non-zero prime ideal in  $O_K$ . The by Lemma 4.69,  $\mathfrak{p} \cap \mathbb{Z}$  is a prime ideal in  $\mathbb{Z}$ , so it is of the form  $\mathfrak{p} \cap \mathbb{Z} = (p)$  for some prime number p. We say that  $\mathfrak{p}$  lies above p.

**Proposition 4.71.** If  $\mathfrak{p}$  is prime, then  $N(\mathfrak{p}) = p^f$  for some  $1 \leq f \leq d = [K : \mathbb{Q}]$ . Furthermore, there exist prime ideals  $\mathfrak{p}_1, \ldots, \mathfrak{p}_r$  of  $O_K$  such that

$$pO_K = \mathfrak{p}_1^{e_1} \dots \mathfrak{p}_r^{e_r}$$

with  $N(\mathfrak{p}_i) = p^{f_i}$ . Moreover, we have

$$d = \sum_{i=1}^{r} e_i f_i.$$

*Proof.* If  $\mathfrak{p}$  lies above p then  $p \in \mathfrak{p}$ . Hence  $\langle p \rangle \subseteq \mathfrak{p}$ , i.e.  $\mathfrak{p} | \langle p \rangle$ , and it follows that  $N(\mathfrak{p}) | N(\langle p \rangle) = p^d$ .  $\Box$ 

**Definition 4.72.** In the notation of the proposition, the integer  $e_i$  is the ramification index of  $\mathfrak{p}_i$ , and  $f_i$  is the residue degree of  $\mathfrak{p}_i$ .

- (1) p is ramified in K if  $e_i \ge 2$  for some i.
- (2) p is totally ramified if there is a unique prime  $\mathfrak{p}$  of  $O_K$  above p with ramification index  $d = [K : \mathbb{Q}]$ , i.e.  $\langle p \rangle = \mathfrak{p}^d$ .
- (3) p is inert in K if  $\langle p \rangle$  is a prime ideal of  $O_K$ .
- (4) p splits completely in K if  $\langle p \rangle$  is the product of d distinct prime ideals of  $O_K$ .

**Theorem 4.73.** (Dedekind's Criterion) Let K be a number field, and suppose that  $O_K = \mathbb{Z}[\alpha]$  for some element  $\alpha$ . Let  $f(t) \in \mathbb{Z}[t]$  be the minimal polynomial of  $\alpha$  over  $\mathbb{Q}$ . Let p be a prime number, and let  $\bar{f} = f \pmod{p}$ . Suppose that  $\bar{f}(t)$  factorizes over  $\mathbb{F}_p[t]$  as

$$f \equiv f_1^{e_1} \cdots f_r^{e_r},$$

with  $\bar{f}_i(t) \in \mathbb{F}_p[t]$  monic and irreducible, and  $\bar{f}_i \neq \bar{f}_j$  unless i = j. Let  $f_i(t) \in \mathbb{Z}[t]$  be a left of  $\bar{f}_i(t)$ . Then the ideal (p) in  $O_K$  factorizes as

$$\langle p \rangle = \mathfrak{p}_1^{e_1} \cdots \mathfrak{p}_r^{e_r}, \qquad \mathfrak{p}_i = \langle p, f_i(\alpha) \rangle.$$

Each ideal  $\mathfrak{p}_i$  is maximal and has norm  $p^{\deg f_i}$ . If  $i \neq j$  then  $\mathfrak{p}_i \neq \mathfrak{p}_j$ .

**Remark 4.74.** The condition  $O_K = \mathbb{Z}[\alpha]$  is equivalent to saying that  $\{1, \alpha, \ldots, \alpha^{d-1}\}$  is an integral basis. There is not always such an  $\alpha$ , but often there is in the examples which we've seen.

The theorem can be generalized as follows: if  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\alpha)$  with  $\alpha$  an algebraic integer, and p is a prime which does not divide  $|O_K/\mathbb{Z}[\alpha]$ , then the conclusion of the theorem holds.

*Proof.* First note that since  $O_K = \mathbb{Z}[\alpha]$ , we have an isomorphism

$$O_K \equiv \mathbb{Z}[t]/\langle f \rangle, \qquad \alpha \mapsto t + \langle f \rangle.$$

This implies that there is an isomorphism

(11) 
$$O_K/\mathfrak{p}_i \equiv \mathbb{Z}[t]/\langle f, p, f_i \rangle \equiv \mathbb{F}_p[t]/\langle \bar{f}, \bar{f}_i \rangle \equiv \mathbb{F}_p[t]/\langle \bar{f}_i \rangle$$

Since  $\bar{f}_i$  is irreducible in  $\mathbb{F}_p[t]$ , it follows that  $\langle \bar{f}_i \rangle$  is a maximal ideal in  $\mathbb{F}_p[t]$ . Hence  $\mathbb{F}_p[t]/\langle \bar{f}_i \rangle$  is a field. On the other hand this implies that  $O_K/\mathfrak{p}_i$  is a field, so  $\mathfrak{p}_i$  is a maximal ideal of  $O_K$ .

The norm of  $\mathfrak{p}_i$  is the number of elements of  $\mathbb{F}_p[t]/(\bar{f}_i)$ , which is equal to

$$p^{[\mathbb{F}_p[t]/\langle \bar{f}_i \rangle:\mathbb{F}_p]} = p^{\partial(\bar{f}_i)}$$

Lecture 17

by Theorem 1.27. Next note that

$$\prod_{i=1}^{r} \mathfrak{p}_{i}^{e_{i}} \subseteq \left\langle p, \prod_{i=1}^{r} f_{i}(\alpha)^{e_{i}} \right\rangle.$$

On the other hand

$$\prod_{i=1}^{r} f_i(\alpha)^{e_i} \equiv f(\alpha) \equiv 0 \mod p$$
$$\prod_{i=1}^{r} \mathfrak{p}_i^{e_i} \subseteq \langle p \rangle.$$

so we have

To prove that we have equality here, it is sufficient to prove that both sides of the equation have the same norm. This is true since

$$N\left(\prod_{i=1}^{r} \mathfrak{p}_{i}^{e_{i}}\right) = \prod_{i=1}^{r} N(\mathfrak{p}_{i})^{e_{i}}$$
$$= \prod_{i=1}^{r} p^{e_{i} \deg \bar{f}_{i}}$$
$$= p^{\sum_{i=1}^{r} e_{i} \deg \bar{f}_{i}}$$
$$= p^{\partial\left(\prod_{i=1}^{r} \bar{f}_{i}^{e_{i}}\right)}$$
$$= p^{\partial\langle f \rangle}$$
$$= p^{[K:\mathbb{Q}]}$$
$$= N(\langle p \rangle).$$

It remains to show that the maximal ideals  $\mathfrak{p}_i$  are distinct. Suppose that  $\mathfrak{p}_i = \mathfrak{p}_j$ . Then  $O_K/\mathfrak{p}_i = O_k/\mathfrak{p}_j$ , which by (11) is equivalent to

$$\mathbb{F}_p[t]/\langle \bar{f}_i \rangle \cong \mathbb{F}_p[t]/\langle \bar{f}_j \rangle.$$

In other words, them image of  $\bar{f}_i(t)$  in  $\mathbb{F}_p[t]/\langle \bar{f}_j \rangle$  is zero (and of course vice versa), i.e.  $\bar{f}_j | \bar{f}_i$ . As both  $\bar{f}_i$  and  $\bar{f}_j$  are monic and irreducible, this implies that  $f_i = f_j$  and hence i = j.

**Corollary 4.75.** Let K be a number field (of degree d) with ring of integers  $O_K = \mathbb{Z}[\theta]$ , and assume that the minimal polynomial of  $\theta$  is Eisenstein at p. Then p is totally ramified in K.

*Proof.* Let f(t) be the minimal polynomial of  $\theta$  over  $\mathbb{Q}$ . Then  $f(t) \equiv t^d \pmod{p}$ , so we deduce from Theorem 4.73 that  $\langle p \rangle = \mathfrak{p}^d$ , where  $\mathfrak{p} = \langle p, \theta \rangle$ .

**Example 4.76.** Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{6})$ , so  $O_K = \mathbb{Z}[\sqrt{6}]$ . The minimal polynomial of  $\sqrt{6}$  over  $\mathbb{Q}$  is  $f(t) = t^2 - 6$ . Here are some values of f:

t	1	$t^2 - 6$
0		-6
±1	1	-5
±	2	-2
	3	3
±4	4	10
±!	5	19

From the table we see that f(t) factorizes modulo small primes as

$$t^{2} - 6 \equiv t^{2} \mod 2$$
$$\equiv t^{2} \mod 3$$
$$\equiv (t+1)(t-1) \mod 5$$
$$\equiv t^{2} - 6 \mod 7$$
$$\equiv t^{2} - 6 \mod 11.$$

By Theorem 4.73, the small primes factorize in  $O_K$  as follows:

$$\begin{array}{lll} \langle 2 \rangle & = & \mathfrak{p}_2^2, & \qquad \mathfrak{p}_2 = \langle 2, \sqrt{6} \rangle, \\ \langle 3 \rangle & = & \mathfrak{p}_3^2, & \qquad \mathfrak{p}_3 = \langle 3, \sqrt{6} \rangle, \\ \langle 5 \rangle & = & \mathfrak{p}_5 \mathfrak{p}_5', & \qquad \mathfrak{p}_5 = \langle 5, \sqrt{6} + 1 \rangle, & \qquad \mathfrak{p}_5' = \langle 5, \sqrt{6} - 1 \rangle \\ & & & 31 \end{array}$$

On the other hand  $\langle 7 \rangle$  and  $\langle 11 \rangle$  are prime in  $O_K$ . The norms of the ideals are also given by the theorem:

$$N(\mathfrak{p}_2) = 2, \quad N(\mathfrak{p}_3) = 3, \quad N(\mathfrak{p}_5) = N(\mathfrak{p}'_5) = 5, \quad N(\langle 7 \rangle) = 49, \quad N(\langle 11 \rangle) = 121.$$

**Example 4.77.** Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt[3]{2})$ ; we have already seen that then  $O_K = \mathbb{Z}[\sqrt[3]{2}]$ , so we can apply Theorem 4.73. The minimal polynomial of  $\sqrt[3]{2}$  is  $f(t) = t^3 - 2$ . To factorize this modulo primes p, we make a table of values of f:

$\begin{array}{c cccc} t & t^3 - 2 \\ \hline 0 & -2 \\ 1 & -1 \\ -1 & -3 \\ 2 & 6 \\ -2 & -10 \\ 3 & 25 \\ -3 & -29 \end{array}$	$t^{3} - 2 \equiv t^{3} \mod 2$ $\equiv (t+1)^{3}$ $\equiv (t+2)(t)$ $\equiv t^{3} - 2 \mod 2$	$mod 3$ $t^2 + 3t + 4) mod 5$
$\langle 2\rangle=\mathfrak{p}_2^3,$	$\mathfrak{p}_2 = \langle 2, \sqrt[3]{2} \rangle,$	$N(\mathfrak{p}_2)=2$
$\langle 3\rangle=\mathfrak{p}_{3}^{3},$	$\mathfrak{p}_2 = \langle 3, \sqrt[3]{2} + 1 \rangle,$	$N(\mathfrak{p}_3)=3$
$\langle 5 \rangle = \mathfrak{p}_5 \mathfrak{p}_{25},$	$\mathfrak{p}_5 = \langle 5, \sqrt[3]{2} + 2 \rangle,$	$N(\mathfrak{p}_5)=5$
	$\mathfrak{p}_{25} = \Big\langle 5, \sqrt[3]{2}^2 + 3\sqrt[3]{2} + 4 \Big\rangle,$	$N(\mathfrak{p}_{25})=25,$

 $\langle 7 \rangle$  is maximal

## 4.7. Factorisation of ideals. We are now able to factorize an ideal $\mathfrak{a}$ of $O_K$ into maximal ideals:

- Calculate  $N(\mathfrak{a})$  and factorize it into primes.
- For each prime p dividing  $N(\mathfrak{a})$ , factorize  $\langle p \rangle$  into maximal ideals of  $O_K$ ;
- Write down all ideals whose norm is equal to the norm of a (this is a finite list);
- To find out which factorization is correct, use the principle: p|a if and only if the generators of a are in p.

 $N(\langle 7 \rangle) = 7^3.$ 

Lecture 18

**Example 4.78.** Again let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{6})$  as above. We factorize the ideal  $(12 + 7\sqrt{6})$ . First note that

$$N(12 + 7\sqrt{6}) = 144 - 6 \times 49 = 144 - 294 = -150,$$

so Corollary 4.67 implies that

$$N(\langle 12 + 7\sqrt{6} \rangle) = 150 = 2 \times 3 \times 5^2.$$

However we already calculated the maximal ideals above 2, 3 and 5, namely

$$\begin{array}{lll} \langle 2 \rangle &=& \mathfrak{p}_2^2, & \mathfrak{p}_2 = \langle 2, \sqrt{6} \rangle, \\ \langle 3 \rangle &=& \mathfrak{p}_3^2, & \mathfrak{p}_3 = \langle 3, \sqrt{6} \rangle, \\ \langle 5 \rangle &=& \mathfrak{p}_5 \mathfrak{p}_5', & \mathfrak{p}_5 = \langle 5, \sqrt{6} + 1 \rangle, & \mathfrak{p}_5' = \langle 5, \sqrt{6} - 1 \rangle \end{array}$$

where

$$N(p_2) = 2,$$
  $N(p_3) = 3,$   $N(p_5) = N(p'_5) = 5.$ 

Hence there are three ideals of norm 150:

$$\mathfrak{p}_2\mathfrak{p}_3\mathfrak{p}_5^2, \quad \mathfrak{p}_2\mathfrak{p}_3\mathfrak{p}_5\mathfrak{p}_5', \quad \mathfrak{p}_2\mathfrak{p}_3\mathfrak{p}_5'^2.$$

Since  $\mathfrak{p}_5\mathfrak{p}_5' = \langle 5 \rangle$  and  $12 + 7\sqrt{6}$  is not a multiple of 5, is follows that  $\langle 12 + 7\sqrt{6} \rangle \neq \mathfrak{p}_2\mathfrak{p}_3\mathfrak{p}_5\mathfrak{p}_5'$ . We are left with two possibilities. Since  $12 + 7\sqrt{6} = 5 + 7(1+\sqrt{6})$ , it follows that  $12 + 7\sqrt{6} \in \mathfrak{p}_5$ , and so  $\mathfrak{p}_5|\langle 12 + 7\sqrt{5} \rangle$ . Hence

$$\langle 12+7\sqrt{6}\rangle = \mathfrak{p}_2\mathfrak{p}_3\mathfrak{p}_5^2.$$

**Example 4.79.** Consider  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{3})$ , so  $O_K = \mathbb{Z}[\sqrt{3}]$ . We want to factorise the ideals  $\langle 3 \rangle$  and  $\langle 10 \rangle$  into irreducibles. The minimal polynomial of  $\sqrt{3}$  is  $f(t) = t^2 - 3$ , so

$$f(t) \equiv t^2 \pmod{3}$$

By Theorem 4.73, it follows that  $\mathfrak{p} = \langle 3 \rangle + \langle \sqrt{3} \rangle = \langle \sqrt{3} \rangle$  is prime in  $O_K$ , and

$$\langle 3 \rangle = \langle \sqrt{3} \rangle^2_{32}$$

Now  $10 = 2 \cdot 5$ , so  $\langle 10 \rangle = \langle 2 \rangle \langle 5 \rangle$ . Let us decompose  $\langle 2 \rangle$  and  $\langle 5 \rangle$  into irreducibles. We have

$$f(t) \equiv t^2 + 1 = (t+1)^2 \pmod{2}$$

so if we let g(t) = t + 1, then Dedekind's criterion states that the ideal

$$\mathfrak{q} = \langle 2 \rangle + \langle \sqrt{3} + 1 \rangle$$

is prime in  $O_K$ . Now

$$\mathfrak{q} = \{2x + (1 + \sqrt{3})y : x, y \in O_K\}$$
$$= \langle 2, 1 + \sqrt{3} \rangle.$$

We therefore deduce from Theorem 4.73 that

$$\langle 2 \rangle = \mathfrak{q}^2 \quad \Rightarrow \quad N(\langle 2 \rangle) = 4 = N(\mathfrak{q})^2,$$

so  $N(\mathfrak{q}) = 2$ . Finally, f(t) is irreducible (mod 5), so Dedekind's criterion implies that  $\langle 5 \rangle$  is a prime ideal in  $O_K$ . Hence

$$\langle 10 \rangle = \langle 2 \rangle \langle 5 \rangle = \mathfrak{q}^2 \langle 5 \rangle.$$

We want to determine all ideals in  $\mathbb{Z}[\sqrt{3}]$  which have norm 50. By Corollary 4.67, we have  $N(\langle 5 \rangle) = 25$ . Suppose now that  $N(\mathfrak{b}) = 50$ . By Lemma 4.57, this implies that

$$\mathfrak{b}|\langle 50\rangle = \langle 2\rangle\langle 5\rangle^2 = \mathfrak{q}^2\langle 5\rangle^2$$

 $\mathbf{so}$ 

$$\mathfrak{b} = \mathfrak{q}^r \langle 5 \rangle^s$$

for some  $r, s \in \{0, 1, 2\}$ . Now

$$N(\mathfrak{b}) = N(\mathfrak{q})^r N(\langle 5 \rangle)^s = 2^r 25^s$$

so we deduce that r = s = 1, and the only ideal in  $\mathbb{Z}[\sqrt{3}]$  of norm 50 is  $\mathfrak{b} = \langle 2, 1 + \sqrt{3} \rangle \langle 5 \rangle$ .

5. An extended example: ramification in quadratic fields

## 5.1. The Legendre symbol.

**Definition 5.1.** Let  $p \ge 3$  be a prime number, and let  $a \in \mathbb{Z}$  be comprime to p. Then a is a quadratic residue (mod p) if there exists  $x \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that  $x^2 \equiv a \pmod{p}$ .

Example 5.2.

- 3 is a quadratic residue (mod 13), since  $4^2 = 16 \equiv 3 \pmod{13}$ .
- 2 is not a quadratic residue (mod 3).

**Lemma 5.3.** Let  $p \ge 3$  be a prime number, and let  $a \in \mathbb{Z}$  be comprime to p. Then the following are equivalent:

- (1) a is a quadratic residue  $\pmod{p}$
- (2)  $a^{\frac{p-1}{2}} \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$ .

*Proof.* Suppose first that a is a quadratic residue (mod p), so  $x^2 = a \pmod{p}$  for some  $x \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Then Fermat's little theorem implies that  $x^{p-1} = 1 \pmod{p}$ , and hence

$$a^{\frac{p-1}{2}} \equiv (x^2)^{\frac{p-1}{2}} \equiv 1 \pmod{p}.$$

Conversely, assume that  $a^{\frac{p-1}{2}} \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$ . Now the group  $(\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z})^{\times}$  is cyclic, and let  $g \in \mathbb{Z}$  be a generator, so  $a \equiv g^r \pmod{p}$  for some  $r \geq 0$ . Then

$$(g^r)^{\frac{p-1}{2}} \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$$

Since g has order p-1 in  $(\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z})^{\times}$ , we have  $(p-1)|r\frac{p-1}{2}$ , so r/2 is an integer, which implies that

 $a \equiv (g^{\frac{r}{2}})^2 \pmod{p},$ 

i.e. a is a quadratic residue.

**Definition 5.4.** Let p be a prime, and let  $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Define the Legendre symbol

$$\begin{pmatrix} \frac{a}{p} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } p \nmid a \text{ and } a \text{ is a quadratic residue} \pmod{p} \\ -1 & \text{if } p \nmid a \text{ and } a \text{ is not a quadratic residue} \pmod{p} \\ 0 & \text{if } p \mid a \end{cases}$$

**Example 5.5.** We have  $\left(\frac{3}{13}\right) = 1$  and  $\left(\frac{2}{3}\right) = -1$ .

**Lemma 5.6.** Let  $p \geq 3$  be prime, and let  $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$ .

- (1) (Euler's lemma)  $\left(\frac{a}{p}\right) \equiv a^{\frac{p-1}{2}} \pmod{p};$ (2)  $\left(\frac{ab}{p}\right) = \left(\frac{a}{p}\right) \left(\frac{b}{p}\right);$
- (3) if  $a \equiv b \pmod{p}$ , then  $\left(\frac{a}{p}\right) = \left(\frac{b}{p}\right)$ .

*Proof.* (i) By Fermat's little theorem, we have  $a^{p-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$ , so p divides

$$a^{p-1} - 1 = \left(a^{\frac{p-1}{2}} - 1\right) \left(a^{\frac{p-1}{2}} + 1\right),$$

i.e.  $a^{\frac{p-1}{2}} \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{p}$ . But by Lemma 5.3, a is a quadratic residue  $\pmod{p}$  if and only if  $a^{\frac{p-1}{2}} \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$ , which finishes the proof.

(ii) Since

$$(ab)^{\frac{p-1}{2}} = a^{\frac{p-1}{2}}b^{\frac{p-1}{2}},$$

part (i) implies that  $\left(\frac{ab}{p}\right) = \left(\frac{a}{p}\right) \left(\frac{b}{p}\right) \pmod{p}$ . But both sides are in  $\{\pm 1\}$ , so they must be equal. (iii) Clear.

**Remark 5.7.** We deduce that the map  $(\mathbb{Z}/p)^{\times} \to \{\pm 1\}$ ,  $a \mapsto \left(\frac{a}{p}\right)$ , is a group homomorphism.

**Proposition 5.8.** Let  $p \ge 3$  be prime. Then

(1)  $\left(\frac{-1}{p}\right) = (-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}};$ (2) -1 is a quadratic residue (mod p) if and only if  $p \equiv 1 \pmod{4}.$ 

Proof. Exercise.

**Corollary 5.9.** There are infinitely many primes p such that  $p \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ .

*Proof.* We argue by contradiction. Suppose there are only finitely many such primes, say  $p_1, \ldots, p_n$ . Put

$$A = (2p_1 \dots p_n)^2 + 1 > 1,$$

so A is divisible by some positive prime number p. Now

$$-1 \equiv (2p_1 \dots p_n)^2 \pmod{p} \Rightarrow \left(\frac{-1}{p}\right) = 1,$$

which implies by Proposition 5.8 that  $p \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ . But by construction  $p \neq p_i$  for all *i*, which gives a contradiction.

5.2. Quadratic reciprocity. The aim of this section is to prove the following theorem, which was first conjectured by Euler and Dirchlet and then proved by Gauss in the *Disquisitiones Arithmeticae*<sup>2</sup>. Gauss referred to it as *theorema aureum*, the "golden theorem", and he wrote

"The fundamental theorem must certainly be regarded as one of the most elegant of its type."

**Theorem 5.10.** (Law of quadratic reciprocity) Let  $p, q \ge 3$  be distinct primes. Then

$$\left(\frac{p}{q}\right)\left(\frac{q}{p}\right) = (-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}\frac{q-1}{2}}$$

Note 5.11. Equivalently, we have

$$\left(\frac{p}{q}\right) = \epsilon \left(\frac{q}{p}\right),$$

where

$$\epsilon = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } p \text{ or } q \text{ is} \equiv 1 \pmod{4} \\ -1 & \text{if } p \text{ and } q \text{ are} \equiv 3 \pmod{4} \end{cases}$$

What about the prime 2?

Lecture 19

 $<sup>^{2}</sup>$ In fact, Gauss gave eight different proofs of the theorem. Nowadays, over 240 different proofs are known!

**Theorem 5.12.** Let  $p \geq 3$  be an odd prime. Then

$$\begin{pmatrix} \frac{2}{p} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } p \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{8} \\ -1 & \text{if } p \equiv \pm 3 \pmod{8} \end{cases}$$

**Remark 5.13.** Theorem 5.12 is equivalent to the following statement:

$$\left(\frac{2}{p}\right) = (-1)^{\frac{p^2-1}{8}}.$$

These theorems are extremely useful, because they make it easy to compute Legende symbols. Example 5.14.

- $\left(\frac{21}{71}\right) = \left(\frac{3}{71}\right) \left(\frac{7}{71}\right) = \left(\frac{71}{3}\right) \left(\frac{71}{7}\right) = \left(\frac{2}{3}\right) \left(\frac{1}{7}\right) = \left(\frac{2}{3}\right) = -1$   $\left(\frac{33}{59}\right) = \left(\frac{3}{59}\right) \left(\frac{11}{59}\right) = -\left(\frac{59}{39}\right) \cdot -\left(\frac{59}{11}\right) = \left(\frac{-1}{3}\right) \left(\frac{4}{11}\right) = (-1)^{\frac{3-1}{2}} = -1.$

There are many proofs of Theorem 5.10 (at least 240!); we will give a proof using our understanding of cyclotomic fields. Let  $F = \mathbb{Q}(\zeta_p)$ , where  $\zeta_p$  is a primitive *p*th root of unity. The proof is based on an exposition of Matthew Morrow. Recall from Theorem 3.34 that  $O_F = \mathbb{Z}[\zeta_p]$ .

**Lemma 5.15.** The field F is a Galois extension of  $\mathbb{Q}$ , with Galois group  $G = \operatorname{Gal}(F/\mathbb{A})$  isomorphic to  $(\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z})^{\times}$ . The isomorphism is given by

$$(\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z})^{\times} \cong \operatorname{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q}), \qquad a \mapsto \sigma_a,$$

where  $\sigma_a$  is determined by  $\sigma_a(\zeta_p) = \zeta_p^a$ .

*Proof.* Elementary exercise in Galois theory.

**Definition 5.16.** Let K be the fixed field of the kernel of the homomorphism

$$\operatorname{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q}) \to \{\pm 1\}, \qquad \sigma_a \mapsto \left(\frac{a}{p}\right).$$

**Note 5.17.** Note that the kernel of the homomorphism consists precisely of the quadratic residue mod p. **Note 5.18.** By Galois theory, K is the unique quadratic extension of  $\mathbb{Q}$  contained in F. Write K = $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$  for some square-free integer d. It is then immediate from the construction that

$$\sigma_a.\sqrt{d} = \left(\frac{a}{p}\right)\sqrt{d}$$

for all  $a \in (\mathbb{Z}/a\mathbb{Z})^{\times}$ .

In order to identify d, we need the following preliminary lemma: Lemma 5.19. We have

$$\sum_{a \in (\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z})^{\times}} \left(\frac{t}{p}\right) = 0.$$

Proof. Exercise.

**Proposition 5.20.** We have  $K = \sqrt{p^*}$ , where  $p^* = (-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}}p$ . *Proof.* Define  $h \in F$  by

$$h = \sum_{a \in (\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z})^{\times}} \left(\frac{a}{p}\right) \sigma_a(\zeta_p).$$

、

Then for all  $b \in (\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z})^{\times}$ , we have

$$\sigma_{b}.h = \sum_{a \in (\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z})^{\times}} \left(\frac{a}{p}\right) \sigma_{b}\sigma_{a}(\zeta_{p})$$

$$= \left(\frac{b}{p}\right)^{-1} \left(\sum_{a \in (\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z})^{\times}} \left(\frac{a}{p}\right) \left(\frac{b}{p}\right) \sigma_{b}\sigma_{a}(\zeta_{p})\right)$$

$$= \left(\frac{b}{p}\right)^{-1}.h$$

$$= \left(\frac{b}{p}\right).h.$$

Hence  $\sigma_b h = h$  for all  $b \in (\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z})^{\times}$  which are quadratic residues (mod p), so  $h \in K$  and in fact  $K = \mathbb{Q}(h).$ 

We now compute  $h^2$ :

$$h^{2} = \sum_{a,b \in (\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z})^{\times}} \left(\frac{a}{p}\right) \left(\frac{b}{p}\right) \sigma_{a}(\zeta_{p})\sigma_{b}(\zeta_{p})$$
$$= \sum_{a,t \in (\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z})^{\times}} \left(\frac{a}{p}\right) \left(\frac{ta}{p}\right) \sigma_{a}(\zeta_{p})\sigma_{ta}(\zeta_{p})$$
$$= \sum_{a,t \in (\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z})^{\times}} \left(\frac{a}{p}\right)^{2} \left(\frac{t}{p}\right) \zeta_{p}^{a(1+t)}$$
$$= \sum_{t \in (\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z})^{\times}} \left(\frac{t}{p}\right) \sum_{a \in (\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z})^{\times}} \zeta_{p}^{a(1+t)}.$$

If  $t \neq -1$  in  $(\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z})^{\times}$ , then

 $\sum_{a \in (\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z})^{\times}} \zeta_p^{a(1+t)} = \sum_{a \in (\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z})^{\times}} \zeta_p^a = -1.$  $\sum \quad \epsilon^{a(1+t)} = p - 1.$ 

If t = -1, then

$$\sum_{a \in (\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z})^{\times}} \zeta_p^{\mathbb{Z}(\mathbb{Z}+1)} = p - 1$$

Since  $\sum_{t \in (\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z})^{\times}} \left(\frac{t}{p}\right) = 0$  by Lemma 5.19, we deduce that

$$h^{2} = \left(\frac{-1}{p}\right)(p-1) - \sum_{t \neq -1} \left(\frac{t}{p}\right) = p\left(\frac{-1}{p}\right).$$

Since  $\left(\frac{-1}{p}\right) = (-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}}$  by Proposition 5.8, the result follows. **Note 5.21.** If  $a \in \mathbb{Z}$  is coprime to p, then

$$\sigma_a(\sqrt{p^*}) = \left(\frac{a}{p}\right)\sqrt{p^*}.$$

**Lemma 5.22.** If  $q \ge 3$  is a prime distinct from p, then

$$\sigma_q(\alpha) \equiv \alpha^q \pmod{\langle q \rangle}$$

for all  $\alpha \in O_F$ .

*Proof.* Let  $X = \{ \alpha \in O_F | \sigma_q(\alpha) \equiv \alpha^q \pmod{\langle q \rangle} \}$ . Then X is closed under multiplication, and the identity

 $(\alpha + \beta)^q \equiv \alpha^q + \beta^q \pmod{\langle q \rangle}$ 

show that it is closed under addition. Clearly X contains 1 and  $\zeta_p$ , so  $X \subseteq O_F$  is a subring containing  $\zeta_p$ . But by Theorem 3.34,  $O_F = \mathbb{Z}[\zeta_p]$ , so  $X = O_F$ . 

We can now prove Theorem 5.10:

Proof. We combine Note 5.21 and Lemma 5.22 to deduce that

$$\left(\frac{q}{p}\right)\sqrt{p^*} = \sigma_q(\sqrt{p^*}) \equiv (\sqrt{p^*})^q \pmod{\langle q \rangle},$$

i.e.  $\left(\frac{q}{p}\right) = (p^*)^{\frac{q-1}{2}} \pmod{\langle q \rangle}$ , which is equivalent to

$$\left(\frac{q}{p}\right) - \left(p^*\right)^{\frac{q-1}{2}} \in \langle q \rangle \cap \mathbb{Z} = q\mathbb{Z}.$$

Also,  $(p^*)^{\frac{q-1}{2}} = (-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}\frac{q-1}{2}}p^{\frac{q-1}{2}}$ , giving

$$\left(\frac{q}{p}\right) = (-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}\frac{q-1}{2}} p^{\frac{q-1}{2}} \pmod{q}.$$
36

Lecture 20

But by Euler's lemma (c.f. Lemma 8.2 (i)) we have that  $p^{\frac{q-1}{2}} \equiv \left(\frac{p}{q}\right) \pmod{q}$ , which implies that

$$\left(\frac{q}{p}\right) = (-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}\frac{q-1}{2}} \left(\frac{p}{q}\right) \pmod{q}.$$

But both sides are in  $\{\pm 1\}$ , so they must actually be equal, which proves the result.

5.3. Ramification in quadratic fields. Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ , where  $d \neq 0, 1$  is square-free. Recall that

$$\Delta_K = \begin{cases} d & \text{if } d \equiv 1 \pmod{4} \\ 4d & \text{if } d \not\equiv 1 \pmod{4} \end{cases}$$

**Note 5.23.** If p is a prime, then  $\langle p \rangle$  factors in  $O_K$  in one of the following ways:

- $\langle p \rangle$  is unramified and splits completely, i.e.  $\langle p \rangle = \mathfrak{p}_1 \mathfrak{p}_2$  with  $\mathfrak{p}_1 \neq \mathfrak{p}_2$ ;
- $\langle p \rangle$  is ramified, i.e.  $\langle p \rangle = \mathfrak{p}^2$ ;
- $\langle p \rangle$  is inert and unramified, i.e. it is a prime ideal in  $O_K$ .

The aim of this section is the following theorem:

**Theorem 5.24.** The ramification behaviour of  $\langle p \rangle$  in  $O_K$  depends only on the value of  $p \pmod{\Delta_K}$ . In other words, if  $p, q \in \mathbb{Z}$  are prime numbers and  $p \equiv q \pmod{\Delta_K}$ , then p is inert/completely split/ramified in K if and only if so is q.

Lemma 5.25. Let p be an odd prime.

- (1) p is inert in K if and only if  $\left(\frac{d}{p}\right) = -1;$
- (2) p is split in K if and only if  $\left(\frac{d}{p}\right) = 1;$
- (3) p is ramified in K if and only if  $\left(\frac{d}{p}\right) = 0$ ;

*Proof.* Let  $\alpha = \frac{\Delta_K + \sqrt{\Delta_K}}{2}$ , so  $O_K = \mathbb{Z}[\alpha]$  and  $\alpha$  has minimum polynomial

$$f(t) = t^2 - \Delta_K t + \frac{\Delta_K (\Delta_K - 1)}{2}$$

Let  $s = \frac{p+1}{2}$ . Then

$$f(t) \equiv (t - s\Delta_K)^2 - s^2\Delta \pmod{p},$$

so we deduce from Theorem 4.73 that

- p is inert in  $K \Leftrightarrow f(t) = f \pmod{p}$  is irreducible  $\Leftrightarrow s^2 \Delta_K$  is not a square in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z} \Leftrightarrow \left(\frac{s^2 \Delta_K}{p}\right) = -1$
- p splits completely in  $K \Leftrightarrow f(t)$  factors into two distinct polynomials  $\Leftrightarrow s^2 \Delta_K$  is a non-zero square in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z} \Leftrightarrow \left(\frac{s^2 \Delta_K}{p}\right) = 1$
- p is ramifies in  $K \Leftrightarrow f(\bar{t})$  is a square  $\Leftrightarrow s^2 \Delta_K = 0 \ \mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z} \Leftrightarrow \left(\frac{s^2 \Delta_K}{p}\right) = 0$

Now observe that  $\left(\frac{s^2\Delta_K}{p}\right) = \left(\frac{d}{p}\right)$ .

We have an analogous result for p = 2:

### Lemma 5.26.

- 2 is inert in  $K \Leftrightarrow d \equiv 5 \pmod{8}$ .
- 2 splits in  $K \Leftrightarrow d \equiv 1 \pmod{8}$ .
- 2 ramifies in  $K \Leftrightarrow d \equiv 2 \text{ or } 3 \pmod{4}$  (which happens if and only if  $2 \mid \Delta_K$ ).

*Proof.* Exercise.

**Corollary 5.27.** A prime p ramifies in K if and only if  $p|\Delta_K$ .<sup>3</sup>

We now prove Theorem 5.24.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>This is true generally: a prime ramifies in a number field if and only if it divides the discriminant.

Proof. Write

$$d = 2^{\epsilon} q_1 \dots q_n$$

where  $q_i$  are odd primes (which might be negative) and  $\epsilon \in \{\pm 1\}$ . If p is any odd prime, then

(12)  
$$\begin{pmatrix} \frac{d}{p} \end{pmatrix} = \left(\frac{2}{p}\right)^{\epsilon} \left(\frac{q_1}{p}\right) \dots \left(\frac{q_m}{p}\right) \\ = \left(\frac{2}{p}\right)^{\epsilon} \left(\frac{p}{q_1}\right) \dots \left(\frac{p}{q_m}\right) \cdot (-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}\left(\frac{q_1-1}{2}+\dots+\frac{q_m-1}{2}\right)} \\ = \left(\frac{2}{p}\right)^{\epsilon} \left(\frac{p}{q_1}\right) \dots \left(\frac{p}{q_m}\right) \cdot (-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}r},$$

where r is the number of primes among  $q_1, \ldots, q_m$  which are  $\equiv 3 \pmod{4}$ .

Let p, p' be prime numbers which are congruent (mod  $\Delta_K$ ). Then there are two cases to consider: (1) p and p' are both odd: by Lemma 5.25, we have to show that  $\left(\frac{d}{p}\right) = \left(\frac{d}{p'}\right)$ . Since  $p \equiv p' \pmod{q_i}$ 

for all i, we deduce from (12) that it is sufficient to show that

(13) 
$$\left(\frac{2}{p}\right)^{\epsilon} (-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}r} = \left(\frac{2}{p'}\right)^{\epsilon} (-1)^{\frac{p'-1}{2}r}$$

• If  $d \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$ , then  $\epsilon = 0$  and  $4|\Delta_K$ , so

$$p \equiv p' \pmod{4} \quad \Rightarrow \quad \frac{p-1}{2} \equiv \frac{p'-1}{2} \pmod{2},$$

which implies (13).

• If  $d \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$ , then  $\epsilon = 1$  and  $8|\Delta_K$ , so

$$p \equiv p' \pmod{8} \quad \Rightarrow \quad \left(\frac{2}{p}\right) = \left(\frac{2}{p'}\right)$$

by Theorem 5.12. Also clearly  $\frac{p-1}{2} \equiv \frac{p'-1}{2} \pmod{2}$  since  $p \equiv p' \pmod{4}$ , wich proves (13).

• If  $d \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ , then  $\epsilon = 0$  and r must be even, so both sides of (13) are equal to 1.

(2) p is odd and  $p' = \pm 2$ . Then  $d \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$  (since otherwise  $4|\Delta_K$ , which implies that  $p \equiv \pm 2 \pmod{4}$ , which is absurd), so  $\epsilon = 0$  and r must be even, and hence

$$\left(\frac{d}{p}\right) = \left(\frac{p}{q_1}\right) \dots \left(\frac{p}{q_m}\right)$$

Since  $p \equiv \pm 2 \pmod{q_i}$  for all *i*, we deduce from Remark 5.13 and Proposition 5.8 that

$$\left(\frac{d}{p}\right) = (\pm 1)^{\frac{q_1-1}{2} + \dots + \frac{q_m-1}{2}} (-1)^{\frac{q_1^2-1}{8} + \dots + \frac{q_m^2-1}{8}}.$$

We analyse the two factors separately.

• Since r is even, we have

$$\frac{q_1-1}{2} + \dots \frac{q_m-1}{2} \equiv 0 \pmod{2},$$

so the first factor is 1.

• Observe that for a, b odd integers, we have

$$\frac{a^2 - 1}{8} + \frac{b^2 - 1}{8} \equiv \frac{a^2b^2 - 1}{8} \pmod{2},$$

which implies that

$$\frac{q_1^2 - 1}{8} + \dots + \frac{q_m^2 - 1}{8} \equiv \frac{d^2 - 1}{8} \pmod{2}$$
  
$$\Rightarrow \quad \left(\frac{d}{p}\right) = (-1)^{\frac{d^2 - 1}{8}} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } d \equiv 1 \pmod{8} \\ -1 & \text{if } d \equiv 5 \pmod{8} \end{cases}$$

Now Lemmata 5.25 and 5.26 show that

$$d \equiv 1 \pmod{8} \implies 2 \text{ and } p \text{ split completely in } K$$
  
$$d \equiv 5 \pmod{8} \implies 2 \text{ and } p \text{ are inert in } K$$
  
$$38$$

This finishes the proof.

#### 6. The ideal class group

6.1. The main theorem.

**Definition 6.1.** Let K be a number field. For a non-zero element  $x \in K$ , define

 $\langle x \rangle = \{ xy : y \in O_K \}.$ 

Note 6.2. (i) If  $x \in O_K$ , then this definition is just the principal ideal generated by x. (ii)  $\langle x \rangle$  is a fractional ideal; we call a fractional ideal of this form a principal fractional ideal.

**Lemma 6.3.** The principal fractional ideals form a subgroup  $\mathcal{P}(K)$  of  $\mathcal{I}(K)$ .

*Proof.* It is clear that  $\langle x \rangle \langle y \rangle = \langle xy \rangle$ , so  $\mathcal{P}(K)$  is closed under multiplication. It remains to show that it is closed under inverses. But if  $x \neq 0$ , then  $\langle x \rangle \langle x^{-1} \rangle = O_K$ , so  $\langle x \rangle^{-1} = \langle x^{-1} \rangle \in \mathcal{P}(K)$ .

**Definition 6.4.** Define the ideal class group of K to be the quotient group

 $\operatorname{Cl}(K) = \mathcal{I}(K) / \mathcal{P}(K).$ 

We call an element of Cl(K) an ideal class of K.

Notation 6.5. If  $\mathfrak{a} \in \mathcal{I}(K)$ , denote by  $[\mathfrak{a}]$  its class in Cl(K), i.e.

$$[\mathfrak{a}] = \{ \langle x \rangle \mathfrak{a} : x \in K^{\times} \}$$

Note that we have  $[\mathfrak{a}] = [\mathfrak{b}]$  if and only if there exists  $x \in K^{\times}$  such that  $\mathfrak{a} = \langle x \rangle \mathfrak{b}$ .

**Remark 6.6.** The class group measures how far away the ring of integers of a number field is from having unique factorisation into irreducibles. If Cl(K) is trivial, then every fractional ideal is principal and in particular every ideal is a principal ideal. It follows that if  $x \in O_K$  is non-zero and we factorise

(14) 
$$\langle x \rangle = \mathfrak{p}_1 \cdots \mathfrak{p}_n$$

for some maximal ideals  $\mathfrak{p}_i$ , then there exist  $a_i \in O_K$  such that  $\mathfrak{p}_i = \langle a_i \rangle$ . As  $\mathfrak{p}_i$  is maximal, the  $a_i$  must be irreducible, so the unique factorisation (14) corresponds to a unique factorisation (up to a unit  $u \in O_K^{\times}$ ) into irreducibles:

$$x = ua_1 \cdots a_n$$
.

Hence the size of Cl(K) tells us how far  $O_K$  is from being a principal ideal domain.

**Theorem 6.7.** Let K be any number field. Then Cl(K) is finite. We call h(K) = |Cl(K)| the class number of K.

The following result is extremely important, as it says that no number field is very far away from being principal. In particular, we have the following result:

**Corollary 6.8.** Let  $\mathfrak{a}$  be any non-zero ideal of  $O_K$ . Then  $a^{h(K)}$  is principal.

The proof of Theorem 6.7 relies on the following key result:

**Proposition 6.9.** There exists a constant c depending only on K with the following property: for every non-zero ideal  $\mathfrak{a}$  of  $O_K$  there exists  $x \in \mathfrak{a}$  such that

$$|N(x)| \le cN(\mathfrak{a}).$$

Using this lemma, we can prove Theorem 6.7. First observe the following:

**Lemma 6.10.** Every class in Cl(K) contains an ideal.

*Proof.* Consider a class  $[\mathfrak{b}] \in \mathrm{Cl}(K)$ , where  $\mathfrak{b}$  is a fractional ideal. By the definition of fractional ideals there exists a non-zero  $\alpha \in O_K$  such that  $\alpha \mathfrak{b} \subset O_K$ , i.e.  $\langle \alpha \rangle \mathfrak{b}$  is an ideal which - by definition - is equivalent to  $\mathfrak{b}$  in  $\mathrm{Cl}(K)$ , as required.

We now prove Theorem 6.7:

*Proof.* Let  $\mathfrak{b}$  be a fractional ideal. We will show that  $[\mathfrak{b}]$  can be represented by an ideal of norm  $\leq c$ . As there are only finitely many ideals with a given norm (Proposition 4.58), it follows that there are only finitely many ideal classes.

By Lemma 6.10, there exists an ideal J in  $[\mathfrak{b}^{-1}]$ , so  $[J] = [\mathfrak{b}^{-1}]$ . By Lemma 6.9, there is a non-zero  $x \in J$  such that  $|N(x)| \leq cN(J)$ . Since  $x \in J$ , it follows that  $J|\langle x \rangle$ , i.e.

$$\langle x \rangle = JJ'$$
 for some ideal  $J'$ 

Hence

$$[J'] = [J]^{-1} = [\mathfrak{b}^{-1}]^{-1} = [\mathfrak{b}],$$

and we have

$$cN(J) \ge |N(x)| = N(\langle x \rangle) = N(J)N(J'),$$

so  $N(J') \leq c$ , as required.

It remains to prove Proposition 6.9, and to find an explicit value for the constant c. We will do this using a very powerful tool called *Minkowski's lemma* and the geometry of numbers.

### 6.2. Lattices and Minkowski's theorem.

**Definition 6.11.** (1) Let  $e_1, \ldots, e_n$  be a set of linearly independent vectors in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . The lattice  $\Lambda$  generated by  $e_1, \ldots, e_n$  is the additive subgroup of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  generated by  $e_1, \ldots, e_n$ , i.e.

 $\Lambda = \{a_1e_1 + \dots + a_ne_n : a_i \in \mathbb{Z}\}.$ 

(2) The fundamental cell  $T(\Lambda)$  is the set

$$T(\Lambda) = \{a_1 e_1 + \dots + a_n e_n | 0 \le a_i < 1 \,\forall \, 1 \le i \le n\}$$

**Lemma 6.12.** Each element of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  lies in exactly one of the sets  $\ell + T$  for some  $\ell \in \Lambda$ . In other words T is a set of representatives for the cosets of  $\Lambda$  in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , i.e. every vector may be written uniquely in the form  $v = \ell + x$  with  $\ell \in \Lambda$  and  $x \in T$ . We define a function  $\operatorname{pr} : \mathbb{R}^n \to T$  by  $\operatorname{pr}(v) = x$ .

**Definition 6.13.** Let X be a measurable<sup>4</sup> subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . The volume of X is defined as

$$\operatorname{vol}(X) = \int_X dx_1 \dots dx_n$$

where  $(x_1, \ldots, x_n)$  are the standard coordinates of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .

**Example 6.14.** For  $\Lambda$  spanned by  $e_1, \ldots, e_n$ , we have

$$\operatorname{vol}(T(\Lambda)) = |\det(e_1,\ldots,e_n)|.$$

We now recall some properties of Lebesque measurable sets:

**Lemma 6.15.** • If X is the finite disjoint union of measurable sets  $X = \bigcup_{i=1}^{m} X_i$ , then X is measurable and

$$\operatorname{vol}(X) = \sum_{i=1}^{m} \operatorname{vol}(X_i).$$

• If  $X, Y \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  are measurable sets with  $Y \subseteq X$ , then  $\operatorname{vol}(Y) \leq \operatorname{vol}(X)$ .

**Proposition 6.16.** Let  $\Lambda$  be a lattice in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  with fundamental cell T. Let  $U \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  be a bounded measurable subset, and suppose that vol(U) > vol(T). Then there are two points  $v, w \in U$  with  $v \neq w$  and  $v - w \in \Lambda$ .

*Proof.* Note that for two points  $v, w \in V$ , we have  $v - w \in \Lambda$  if and only if pr(v) = pr(w). We now argue by contradiction. Suppose that there are no two points  $v, w \in U$ ,  $v \neq w$ , such that pr(v) = pr(w), so the restriction of pr to U is injective. The set U may be written as a finite disjoint union:

$$U = \bigcup_{i=1}^{m} U_{\ell_i},$$

where  $U_{\ell_i} = U \cap (T + \ell_i)$ . Clearly on the sets  $U_{\ell_i}$ , the map pr is given by pr(v) = v - l. Hence  $pr(U_{\ell_i}) = U_{\ell_i} - \ell_i$ . Since pr is injective on U, the sets  $U_{\ell_i} - \ell_i$  are disjoint, so

$$\sum_{i=1}^{m} \operatorname{vol}(U_{\ell_i} - \ell_i) = \operatorname{vol}\left(\bigcup_{i=1}^{m} (U_{\ell_i} - \ell_i)\right)$$

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup>with respect to Lebesgue measure

It follows that

$$\operatorname{vol}(U) = \sum_{i=1}^{m} \operatorname{vol}(U_{\ell_i}) = \sum_{i=1}^{m} \operatorname{vol}(U_{\ell_i} - \ell_i) = \operatorname{vol}\left(\bigcup_{i=1}^{m} (U_{\ell_i} - \ell_i)\right) \le \operatorname{vol}(T),$$

which gives a contradiction.

**Definition 6.17.** A subset  $U \subset V$  is convex if for any two points  $u, v \in U$  and any  $\lambda \in [0, 1]$  the point  $\lambda u + (1 - \lambda)v$  is also in U.

**Examples 6.18.** A circle, a square and a triangle in  $\mathbb{R}^2$  are convex, but an annulus isn't.

**Definition 6.19.** A subset  $U \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  is symmetric if for any point  $u \in U$  we also have  $-u \in U$ .

**Theorem 6.20.** (Minkowski's lemma) Let  $\Lambda$  be a lattice with volumen T. Let  $U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  be convex and symmetric and suppose  $\operatorname{vol}(U) > 2^n \operatorname{vol}(T)$ . Then there is a non-zero point of  $\Lambda$  in U.

*Proof.* Note that  $2^n \operatorname{vol}(T) = \operatorname{vol}(2T)$ . Hence we have  $\operatorname{vol}(U) > \operatorname{vol}(2T)$  by assumption, so Lemma 6.16 implies that there are two distinct points  $v, w \in U$  such that  $v - w \in 2\Lambda$ , i.e.  $\frac{v - w}{2} \in \Lambda$ . It remains to show that we also have  $\frac{v-w}{2} \in U$ . Now since U is symmetric, we have  $-w \in U$ . Since U is convex we have  $(v-w)/2 \in U$ .  $\square$ 

6.3. Interlude: some cute applications of Minkowski's lemma. Minkowski's theorem has some very pretty and surprising applications to some elementary problems in number theory. We will study two of those: the two-square and the four-square theorems.

6.3.1. The two-square theorem. The aim of this section is to prove the following result:

**Theorem 6.21.** Every prime of the form 4k + 1 is the sum of two squares.

**Lemma 6.22.** -1 is a quadratic residue (mod p).

*Proof.* Immediate from Proposition 5.8.

**Lemma 6.23.** Let  $u \in \mathbb{Z}$  satisfy  $u^2 \equiv -1 \pmod{p}$ , and let  $\Lambda$  be the sublattice of  $\mathbb{Z}^2$  consisting of all pairs  $(a,b) \in \mathbb{Z}^2$  such that  $b \equiv ua \pmod{p}$ .

Then  $\Lambda$  is a subgroup of  $\mathbb{Z}^2$  of index p, and hence  $T(\Lambda) = p$ .

*Proof.* Exercise.

We can now prove Theorem 6.21.

*Proof.* Let C be a circle of radius r, so  $vol(C) = \pi r^2$ . It follows from Theorem 6.20 that if

 $\pi r^2 > 4p$ 

then C contains a non-zero point of  $\Lambda$ . Take  $r^2 = \frac{3p}{2}$ , so there exists a point  $(a,b) \in \Lambda$ ,  $(a,b) \neq (0,0)$ , such that  $0 \neq a^2 + b^2 < r^2 < 2p.$ 

But

$$a^2 + b^2 \equiv a^2 + u^2 a^2 \equiv 0 \pmod{p},$$

so  $a^2 + b^2$  must be a multiple of p between 0 and 2p, so it must be equal to p.

6.3.2. The four-square theorem. A refined form of this argument gives the following famous result:

**Theorem 6.24.** [Lagrange, 1770] Every positive integer is a sum of four integer squares.

**Remark 6.25.** Euler learnt about the four-square problem in a paper of Fermat. In a letter to Goldbach. he wrote:

"Incidi nuper, opera Fermatii legens, in aliud quoddam non inelegans theorema: Numerum quemcunque esse summam quatuor quadratorum, seu semper inveniri posse quatuor numeros quadratos, quorum summa aequalis sit numero dato, ut 7 = 1+1+1+4."

Apparently Euler spent 40 years trying to prove it (without succeeding)! He did however succeed in simplifying Lagrange's proof shortly after it was published.

**Lemma 6.26.** It is sufficient to prove that every prime is the sum of four squares.

*Proof.* Immediate from the identity

(15)  

$$(a^{2} + b^{2} + c^{2} + d^{2})(A^{2} + B^{2} + C^{2} + D^{2})$$

$$= (aA - bB - cC - dD)^{2} + (aB + bA + cD - dC)^{2}$$

$$+ (aC - bD + cA + dB)^{2} + (aD + bC - cB + dA)^{2}.$$

**Remark 6.27.** The identity (15), which was first discovered by Euler, arises from the multiplication rule in the quaternions: recall that the quaternions are the  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector spanned by the basis 1, i, j, k subject to the multiplication rules

$$\begin{split} \mathbf{i}^2 &= \mathbf{j}^2 = \mathbf{k}^2 = -\mathbf{1},\\ \mathbf{i}\mathbf{j} &= \mathbf{k} = -\mathbf{j}\mathbf{i},\\ \mathbf{j}\mathbf{k} &= \mathbf{i} = -\mathbf{k}\mathbf{j},\\ \mathbf{k}\mathbf{i} &= \mathbf{j} = -\mathbf{i}\mathbf{k}. \end{split}$$

For an element  $\alpha = a\mathbf{1} + b\mathbf{i} + c\mathbf{j} + d\mathbf{k}$ , we define the norm  $||\alpha||$  by

$$||\alpha||^2 = a^2 + b^2 + c^2 + d^2.$$

Then it is easy to check that the norm is multiplicative, so the identity (15) follows.

Note 6.28. We have

$$2 = 1^2 + 1^2 + 0^2 + 0^2,$$

so we need to show that every odd prime is the sum of four squares.

**Lemma 6.29.** Let p be an odd prime. Then there exist  $u, v \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that

$$u^2 + v^2 + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{p}.$$

*Proof.* Observe that both  $u^2$  and  $-1-v^2$  each take  $\frac{p+1}{2}$  distinct values as u and v range over  $0, \ldots, p-1$ . Hence by the pigeonhole principle, there must be  $u, v \in [0, \ldots, p-1]$  such that  $u^2 \equiv -1-v^2 \pmod{p}$ .  $\Box$ 

**Lemma 6.30.** Let  $u, v \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that  $u^2 + v^2 + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$ . Let  $\Lambda \subseteq \mathbb{Z}^4$  be the lattice of points (a, b, c, d) which satisfy

$$c \equiv ua + vb \pmod{p}$$
 and  $d \equiv ub - va \pmod{p}$ .

Then  $\Lambda$  has index  $p^2$  in  $\mathbb{Z}^4$ , and hence  $T(\Lambda) = p^2$ .

Proof. Exercise.

We now prove the theorem.

*Proof.* Let B be the 4-dimensional sphere of radius r, centred at the origin, so  $vol(B) = \frac{1}{2}\pi^2 r^4$ . If we choose  $r > 16p^2$  (say  $r^2 = 1.9p$ ), then by Theorem 6.20 there exists a non-zero lattice point (a, b, c, d) in B, so

$$0 \neq a^2 + b^2 + c^2 + d^2 \le r^2 = 1.9p < 2p.$$

But

$$a^{2} + b^{2} + c^{2} + d^{2} \equiv (a^{2} + b^{2})(1 + u^{2} + v^{2}) \equiv 0 \pmod{p},$$

so since  $0 < a^2 + b^2 + c^2 + d^2 < 2p$ , it must be equal to p, as required.

6.4. Geometry of numbers. In this section, we will prove Lemma 6.9 and give an explicit bound for the constant c.

Let  $d = [K : \mathbb{Q}]$ . Recall that we have field embeddings  $\sigma_1, \ldots, \sigma_d : k \hookrightarrow \mathbb{C}$ .

**Definition 6.31.** We call an embedding  $\sigma_i$  real if  $\sigma_i(K) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$ . Otherwise we shall call the embedding complex.

**Note 6.32.** If  $\sigma_i$  is a complex embedding then its complex conjugate  $\bar{\sigma}_i$  is another complex embedding, so the complex embeddings come in pairs.

**Definition 6.33.** Let r be the number of real embeddings and s the number of pairs of complex embeddings. Thus d = r + 2s.

**Note 6.34.** Note that if  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\alpha)$  then  $\sigma_i$  is a real embedding if and only if  $\sigma_i(\alpha) \in \mathbb{R}$ . Hence r is the number of real roots of the minimal polynomial of  $\alpha$ , and s is the number of complex conjugate pairs of roots, which are not real.

We will use Theorem 6.20 in order to prove Lemma 6.9. Recall that we have field embeddings  $\sigma_1, \ldots, \sigma_d$ . Reorder these so that  $\sigma_1, \ldots, \sigma_r$  are real and  $\sigma_{r+1}, \ldots, \sigma_{r+2s}$  are complex, with  $\sigma_{r+s+i} = \bar{\sigma}_{r+i}$ .

**Definition 6.35.** Define the d-dimensional real vector space  $K_{\infty}$  by

$$K_{\infty} = \mathbb{R}^r \oplus \mathbb{C}^s.$$

**Note 6.36.** There is an embedding  $\underline{\sigma}: K \to K_{\infty}$  defined by

$$\underline{\sigma}(x) = \begin{pmatrix} \sigma_1(x) \\ \vdots \\ \sigma_{r+s}(x) \end{pmatrix}.$$

Since each field embedding is injective,  $\underline{\sigma}$  is also injective.

**Proposition 6.37.** If  $\mathcal{B}$  is a basis of K over  $\mathbb{Q}$ , then  $\underline{\sigma}(\mathcal{B})$  is a basis for  $K_{\infty}$  over  $\mathbb{R}$ . Furthermore, the fundamental cell has volume

$$\operatorname{vol}(\mathcal{P}) = 2^{-s} \sqrt{|\Delta[\mathcal{B}]|}.$$

*Proof.* It is sufficient to show that the volume of  $\mathcal{P}$  is given by the formula, since if  $\underline{\sigma}\mathcal{B}$  were not a basis, then this volume would be zero. By Example 6.14, the volume is given by:

$$\operatorname{vol}(\mathcal{P}) = \left| \det \begin{pmatrix} \sigma_1(b_1) & \dots & \sigma_1(b_d) \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \sigma_r(b_1) & \dots & \sigma_r(b_d) \\ \Re \sigma_{r+1}(b_1) & \dots & \Re \sigma_{r+1}(b_d) \\ \Im \sigma_{r+1}(b_1) & \dots & \Im \sigma_{r+1}(b_d) \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \Re \sigma_{r+s}(b_1) & \dots & \Re \sigma_{r+s}(b_d) \\ \Im \sigma_{r+s}(b_1) & \dots & \Im \sigma_{r+s}(b_d) \end{pmatrix} \right|$$

Adding  $i \times row(r+2a)$  to row(r+2a-1) for  $a = 1, \ldots s$  we obtain:

$$\operatorname{vol}(\mathcal{P}) = \left| \det \begin{pmatrix} \sigma_1(b_1) & \dots & \sigma_1(b_d) \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \sigma_r(b_1) & \dots & \sigma_r(b_d) \\ \sigma_{r+1}(b_1) & \dots & \sigma_{r+1}(b_d) \\ \Im \sigma_{r+1}(b_1) & \dots & \Im \sigma_{r+1}(b_d) \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \sigma_{r+s}(b_1) & \dots & \sigma_{r+s}(b_d) \\ \Im \sigma_{r+s}(b_1) & \dots & \Im \sigma_{r+s}(b_d) \end{pmatrix} \right|.$$

Multiplying rows r + 2a by -2i we obtain:

$$\operatorname{vol}(\mathcal{P}) = 2^{-s} \left| \det \begin{pmatrix} \sigma_{1}(b_{1}) & \dots & \sigma_{1}(b_{d}) \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \sigma_{r}(b_{1}) & \dots & \sigma_{r}(b_{d}) \\ \sigma_{r+1}(b_{1}) & \dots & \sigma_{r+1}(b_{d}) \\ -2i\Im\sigma_{r+1}(b_{1}) & \dots & -2\Im\sigma_{r+1}(b_{d}) \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \sigma_{r+s}(b_{1}) & \dots & \sigma_{r+s}(b_{d}) \\ -2i\Im\sigma_{r+s}(b_{1}) & \dots & -2\Im\sigma_{r+s}(b_{d}) \end{pmatrix} \right|.$$

Subtracting rows r + 2a - 1 from rows r + 2a we obtain:

$$\operatorname{vol}(\mathcal{P}) = 2^{-s} \left| \det \begin{pmatrix} \sigma_1(b_1) & \dots & \sigma_1(b_d) \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \sigma_r(b_1) & \dots & \sigma_r(b_d) \\ \sigma_{r+1}(b_1) & \dots & \sigma_{r+1}(b_d) \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \sigma_{r+s}(b_1) & \dots & \sigma_{r+s}(b_d) \\ \overline{\sigma}_{r+s}(b_1) & \dots & \overline{\sigma}_{r+s}(b_d) \end{pmatrix} \right|.$$

Reordering the rows we have:

$$\operatorname{vol}(\mathcal{P}) = 2^{-s} \left| \det \begin{pmatrix} \sigma_1(b_1) & \dots & \sigma_1(b_d) \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \sigma_d(b_1) & \dots & \sigma_d(b_d) \end{pmatrix} \right| = 2^{-s} \sqrt{|\Delta(\mathcal{B})|}.$$

Here, we get the second equality from Proposition 2.31.

**Lemma 6.38.** Let I be a non-zero ideal of  $O_K$ . Then there is a non-zero element  $x \in I$  such that

$$|N(x)| \le \left(\frac{2}{\pi}\right)^s \sqrt{|\Delta|}N(I),$$

where  $\Delta$  is the discriminant of an integral basis.

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{B}$  be a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis of I, i.e.  $I = \operatorname{Span}_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathcal{B}$ . Then Proposition 6.37 implies that  $\underline{\sigma}(I)$  is a lattice in  $K_{\infty}$  with volume  $2^{-s}\sqrt{|\Delta \mathcal{B}|}$ . Recall that  $N(I) = \sqrt{\frac{\Delta \mathcal{B}}{\Delta}}$  by Proposition 4.65. Hence

$$\operatorname{vol}(\underline{\sigma}(I)) = 2^{-s} \sqrt{|\Delta|} N(I).$$

For any a > 0 consider the following subset of  $K_{\infty}$ :

$$U_a = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ \vdots \\ x_{r+s} \end{pmatrix} : |x_i| < a \right\}.$$

The set  $U_a$  is clearly symmetric and convex. Its volume is given by

$$\operatorname{vol}(U_a) = (2a)^r (\pi a^2)^s = 2^r \pi^s a^d.$$

On the other hand if  $\underline{\sigma}(x) \in U_a$  then for every field embedding we have  $|\sigma_i(x)| < a$ , which implies that

$$|N(x)| = \left|\prod_{i=1}^{d} \sigma_i(x)\right| < a^d$$

We can apply Minkowski's Lemma with  $\sigma(I)$  and  $U_a$  as long as

$$\begin{aligned} \operatorname{vol}(U_a) &= 2^r \pi^s a^d > \operatorname{vol}(\underline{\sigma}(I)) = 2^d 2^{-s} \sqrt{|\Delta|} N(I) \\ \Leftrightarrow & a^d > c N(I), \end{aligned}$$

where  $c = \left(\frac{2}{\pi}\right)^s \sqrt{|\Delta|}$ . As longs as *a* satisfies this inequality, Theorem 6.20 implies that there is a non-zero element  $x \in I$  such that  $\underline{\sigma}(x) \in U_a$ , and hence  $N(x) < a^d$ .

We have shown that for any b > cN(I) (here  $b = a^d$  in the above notation), there is a non-zero  $x \in I$  with |N(x)| < b. Now let

$$N = \min\left\{ |N(x)| : x \in I \setminus \{0\} \right\}.$$

The minimum is attained since N(x) takes integer values. Clearly N < b for all b > cN(I) and hence  $N \le cN(I)$ .

This finishes the proof that the class group is finite (Theorem 6.7), and proves also that every ideal class contains an ideal whose norm is  $\leq \left(\frac{2}{\pi}\right)^s \sqrt{|\Delta|}$ . In order to show tat every ideal class contains ad ideal with norm  $\leq \left(\frac{4}{\pi}\right)^s \frac{d!}{d^d} \sqrt{|\Delta|}$ , we need to work with a different convex symmetric subset of  $K_{\infty}$ .

Lemma 6.39. For a > 0, define

$$U'_a = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ \vdots \\ x_{r+s} \end{pmatrix} : |x_1| + \dots + |x_{r+s}| < a \right\}.$$

Then  $U'_a$  is a symmetric convect subset of  $K_{\infty}$ .

*Proof.* Recall that for  $r < k \le r + s$ ,  $x_k$  is a complex number, say  $x_k = y_k + iz_k$ . Then  $|x_k| = \sqrt{y_k^2 + z_k^2}$ . The covenxity of  $U'_a$  follows from the well-known inequality between geometric and arithmetic mean.  $\Box$ 

Proposition 6.40. We have

$$\operatorname{vol}(U'_a) = 2^r \left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)^s \frac{a^d}{d!}$$

*Proof.* Not given - see e.g. p.116 in Langs' Algebraic number theory.

Repeating then the above argument for  $U'_a$ , we deduce the following theorem:

**Theorem 6.41.** Suppose that  $[K : \mathbb{Q}] = d$ . Then every ideal class in Cl(K) contains an ideal of norm

$$\leq \left(\frac{4}{\pi}\right)^s \frac{d!}{d^d} \sqrt{|\Delta|}.$$

6.5. **Examples.** We will now calculate explicitly the ideal class group for a selection of number fields.

**Notation 6.42.** Let K be a number field with ring of integers  $O_K$ . For a non-zero ideal  $\mathfrak{p}$  of  $O_K$ , write  $[\mathfrak{p}]$  for its class in  $\operatorname{Cl}(K)$ . If  $\mathfrak{p}, \mathfrak{q}$  are non-zero ideals in  $O_K$ , write  $\mathfrak{p} \sim \mathfrak{q}$  if  $[\mathfrak{p}] = [\mathfrak{q}]$ .

We have the following algorithm: let K be a number field.

- Determine  $d = [K : \mathbb{Q}];$
- Calculate  $|\Delta|$ , where  $\Delta$  is the discriminant of any integral basis of K;
- Determine the numbers r and 2s of real and complex embeddings of K;
- Calculate the Minkowski bound  $c = \left(\frac{4}{\pi}\right)^s \frac{d!}{d^d} \sqrt{|\Delta|};$
- Determine the set of rational primes  $p \leq c$ ;
- Determine the ideal factorisation of each principal ideal (p), which p as in the previous step;
- Determine all products of these prime ideals which have norm  $\leq c$ ;
- Determine the generators of Cl(K) from the classes of these products.

**Example 6.43.**  $K = \mathbb{Q}(i)$  has trivial class group: we know that 1, i is an integral basis of K with discriminant

$$|\Delta[1, i]| = |\det(A)| = 4.$$

Moreover, we have r = 0, s = 1, so

$$c = \frac{4}{\pi} \approx 1.273,$$

i.e. every ideal class contains an ideal of norm  $\leq 1$ . However, the only ideal with norm 1 is the trivial ideal, so there is only one ideal class and h(K) = 1.

**Example 6.44.** Consider the field  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{-19})$ . As  $-19 \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ , an integral basis of K is  $1, \tau$ , where  $\tau$  is a root of the polynomial

$$f(t) = t^2 - t + 5.$$

It is easy to calculate that

$$\Delta = \Delta[1, \tau] = 19.$$

The two embeddings of K are determined by  $\sigma_1(\sqrt{-19}) = \sqrt{-19}$  and  $\sigma_2(\sqrt{-19}) = -\sqrt{-19}$ , so r = 0 and s = 1. It follows from Theorem 6.41 that every ideal class contains an ideal of norm

$$\leq \frac{4}{\pi} \frac{2!}{2^2} \sqrt{19} \approx 2.775$$

i.e. of norm  $\leq 2$ . Suppose now that  $\mathfrak{a}$  has norm 2. Then  $\mathfrak{a}|\langle 2 \rangle$ , so we need to factorise  $\langle 2 \rangle$ . As  $O_K = \mathbb{Q}[\tau]$ , we can use Dedekind's criterion (Theorem 4.73): we have

$$f(t) \equiv t^2 + t + 1 \pmod{2}$$

is irreducible, so  $\langle 2 \rangle$  is prime. Moreover,  $N(\langle 2 \rangle) = 2^2$ , so there are no ideals in  $O_K$  of norm 2. Hence h(K) = 1.

**Remark 6.45.** The famous Stark–Heegner theorem says that there are precisely nine imaginary quadratic fields  $Q(\sqrt{-d})$  with class number 1: the values of d are

**Example 6.46.** Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{6})$ . Then d = 2, r = 1 and s = 0. We know from Theorem 3.26 that  $1, \sqrt{6}$  is an integral basis of K, and it is easy to calculate that  $|\Delta[1, \sqrt{6}] = 4 \cdot 6 = 24$ . We calculate the Minkowski bound:

$$c = \frac{2!}{4}\sqrt{24} \approx 2.449.$$

The only rational prime  $\leq c$  is 2. Using Dedekind's criterion, we see that  $(2) = \mathfrak{p}_2^2$ , where  $\mathfrak{p}_2 = \langle 2, \sqrt{6} \rangle$  with  $N(\mathfrak{p}_2) = 2$ . Hence  $\operatorname{Cl}(K)$  is generated by  $[\mathfrak{p}_2]$ . Is  $[\mathfrak{p}_2]$  trivial, i.e. is  $\mathfrak{p}_2$  principal? Suppose that there exist  $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that  $\mathfrak{p}_2 = \langle a + b\sqrt{6} \rangle$ . Then

$$2 = N(\mathfrak{p}_2) = N(\langle a + b\sqrt{6} \rangle) = |N(a + b\sqrt{6})| = |a^2 - 6b^2|.$$

This has a solution, e.g  $a = \pm 2$  and  $b = \pm 1$ .

Claim.  $\mathfrak{p}_2 = \langle 2 - \sqrt{6} \rangle.$ 

It is clear that  $\langle 2 - \sqrt{6} \rangle \subseteq \mathfrak{p}_2$ . We therefore need to show that  $2, \sqrt{6} \in \langle 2 - \sqrt{6} \rangle$ . Now

$$\begin{aligned} (2-\sqrt{6})(2+\sqrt{6}) &= -2 \qquad \Rightarrow \qquad 2 \in \langle 2-\sqrt{6} \rangle \\ &\Rightarrow \qquad \sqrt{6} \in \langle 2-\sqrt{-6} \rangle \end{aligned}$$

which proves the claim.

Hence  $[\mathfrak{p}_2] = [O_K]$ , and so  $Cl(K) = \{1\}$ , and K is a unique factorisation domain.

**Remark 6.47.** It is not known whether there are infinitely many real quadratic fields with class number 1.

**Example 6.48.** Let  $K = \sqrt{-10}$ , so d = 2, r = 0 and s = 1. We know from Theorem 3.26 that  $1, \sqrt{-10}$  is an integral basis of K, and it is easy to calculate that  $|\Delta[1, \sqrt{-10}]| = 4 \cdot 10 = 40$ . We calculate the Minkowski bound:

$$c = \frac{4}{\pi} \frac{2!}{4} \sqrt{40} \approx 4.026.$$

The only rational primes  $\leq c$  are 2 and 3. To study their factorisation, use Dedekind's criterion:

Hence  $\operatorname{Cl}(K)$  is generated by  $[\mathfrak{p}_2]$ . Is  $\mathfrak{p}_2$  principal? Suppose that there exist  $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that  $\mathfrak{p}_2 = \langle a + b\sqrt{-10} \rangle$ . Then

$$2 = N(\mathfrak{p}_2) = \left| N(a + b\sqrt{-10}) \right| = a^2 + 10b^2.$$

However, there are no integers a, b which satisfy this equation, so  $\mathfrak{p}_2$  is not principal. We deduce that  $[\mathfrak{p}_2]$  has order 2 and hence  $\operatorname{Cl}(K) \cong \mathbb{Z}/2$ .

**Example 6.49.** We calculate the class group of  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{-14})$ . We first determine an integral basis of K. Any element x of K is of the form  $x = a + b\sqrt{-14}$  for some  $a, b \in \mathbb{Q}$ . If  $b \neq 0$ , the minimal polynomial of x over  $\mathbb{Q}$  is given by

$$f(t) = t^2 - 2at + a^2 + 14b^2.$$

Then x is an algebraic integer if and only if  $2a, a^2 + 14b^2 \in \mathbb{Z}$ , i.e. if and only if  $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Hence  $\{1, \sqrt{-14}\}$  is an integral basis of K. We now calculate the discriminant  $\Delta = \Delta[1, \sqrt{-14}]$  of K: the minimal polynomial of  $\sqrt{-14}$  over  $\mathbb{Q}$  is  $f(t) = t^2 + 14$ , (irreducible by Eisenstein's criterion); the formal derivative is Df(t) = 2t. The formula for the discriminant says that

$$\Delta[1,\sqrt{-14}] = -N(2\sqrt{-14}) = -2^2N(\sqrt{-14}) = -2^2\cdot\sqrt{-14}\cdot(-\sqrt{-14}) = -2^37.$$

We now determine Minkowski's bound: we have  $[\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{-14}):\mathbb{Q}] = \partial(f) = 2$ , and there are two complex embeddings, determined by  $\sqrt{-14} \to \pm \sqrt{-14}$ . Hence  $r_2 = 1$ , and Minkowski's bound is

$$M = \sqrt{|\Delta|} \frac{4}{\pi} \frac{2!}{2^2}$$
$$= \sqrt{56} \frac{2}{\pi}$$
$$< 5,$$

so the class group is generated by primes dividing (2) and (3). We factorise (2) and (3) using Dedekind's criterion:

where  $\mathfrak{p} = \langle 2, \sqrt{-14} \rangle$ ,  $\mathfrak{q} = \langle 3, 1 - \sqrt{-14} \rangle$  and  $\mathfrak{q}' = \langle 3, 1 + \sqrt{-14} \rangle$ .

Note that  $\mathfrak{p}^2 \sim 1$  and  $\mathfrak{q}' \sim (\mathfrak{q})^{-1}$ , so the ideal class group is generated by  $\mathfrak{p}$  and  $\mathfrak{q}'$ . To establish a relation between the classes of  $\mathfrak{p}$  and  $\mathfrak{q}'$ , note that  $2 + \sqrt{-14}$  is an element of both  $\mathfrak{p}$  and  $\mathfrak{q}$ . Now  $\mathfrak{p}$  and  $\mathfrak{q}$  are distinct prime ideals, so by unique factorisation of ideals there exists an ideal  $\mathfrak{r}$  such that

$$\langle 2+\sqrt{-14}
angle = \mathfrak{rpq}$$

Taking norms, we deduce that  $N(\mathfrak{r}) = 3$ , so  $\mathfrak{r} = \mathfrak{q}$  or  $\mathfrak{r} = \mathfrak{q}'$ . If  $\mathfrak{r} = \mathfrak{q}'$ , then  $\langle 3 \rangle | \langle 2 + \sqrt{-14} \rangle$ , which is impossible. Hence

so

$$\langle 2+\sqrt{-14}\rangle=\mathfrak{p}\mathfrak{q}^2,$$

$$\mathfrak{q}^2 \sim \mathfrak{p}^{-1} \sim \mathfrak{p},$$
  
 $\mathfrak{q}^3 \sim \mathfrak{p}\mathfrak{q} \sim \mathfrak{q}^{-1}.$ 

Hence  $1, q, q^2, q^3$  are all the ideal classes. To show that these classes are distinct, it is sufficient to show that  $\mathfrak{q}^2 \not\sim 1$ : the  $\mathfrak{q} \not\sim 1$ , and hence  $\mathfrak{q}^3 \sim \mathfrak{q}^{-1} \not\sim 1$ . If  $\mathfrak{q}^2 \sim 1$ , then  $\mathfrak{p} \sim 1$ , i.e. the ideal  $\mathfrak{p} = \langle 2, \sqrt{-14} \rangle$  is principal, say

$$\langle 2, \sqrt{-14} \rangle = \langle a + b\sqrt{-14} \rangle$$

for some  $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Then

$$N(\mathfrak{p}) = 2 = N(\langle a + b\sqrt{-14} \rangle) = |N(a + b\sqrt{-14})| = a^2 + 14b^2,$$

But this is impossible. Hence  $Cl(K) \cong C_4$ , generated by the class of  $\mathfrak{q}$ .

**Example 6.50.** Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{-23})$ , so d = 2, r = 0 and s = 1. Now  $-23 \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ , so  $1, \tau$  is an integral basis of K, where  $\tau = \frac{1+\sqrt{-23}}{2}$ . It is easy to see that  $|\Delta[1,\tau]| = 23$ , so Minkowski's bound is

$$c = \frac{4}{\pi} \frac{2!}{4} \sqrt{23} \approx 3.053$$

The only rational primes  $\leq c$  are 2 and 3. We use Dedekind's criterion (which we can use as  $O_K = \mathbb{Z}[\tau]$ ) to factorise the corresponding ideals. The minimal polynomial of  $\tau$  is  $f(t) = t^2 - t^2 + 6$ . Hence

As  $\mathfrak{p}'_2 \sim \mathfrak{p}_2^{-1}$  and  $\mathfrak{p}'_3 \sim \mathfrak{p}_3$ ,  $\operatorname{Cl}(K)$  is generated by  $[\mathfrak{p}_2]$  and  $[\mathfrak{p}_3]$ . By Theorem 4.73, we have

$$\mathfrak{p}_2 = \langle 2, \tau \rangle$$
 and  $\mathfrak{p}_3 = \langle 3, \tau \rangle$ .

so  $\mathfrak{p}_2\mathfrak{p}_3 = \langle 6, 2\tau, 3\tau, \tau^2 \rangle$ . Note that  $\tau = 3\tau - 2\tau \in \mathfrak{p}_2\mathfrak{p}_3$ . Also, we have

$$6 = \tau - \tau^2$$

so  $\mathfrak{p}_2\mathfrak{p}_3 = \langle \tau \rangle$ , i.e.  $\mathfrak{p}_2 \sim \mathfrak{p}_3^{-1}$ , which is equivalent to  $[\mathfrak{p}_2] = [\mathfrak{p}_3]^{-1}$ . It follows that  $\operatorname{Cl}(K)$  is generated by  $[\mathfrak{p}_2]$ . Now what is the order of  $\mathfrak{p}_2$ ? We first show that  $\mathfrak{p}_2$  is not principal. Suppose there exist  $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that  $\mathfrak{p}_2 = \langle a + b\tau \rangle$ . Note that  $a + b\tau = a + \frac{b}{2} + \frac{b}{2}\sqrt{-23}$ . Then

$$N(\mathfrak{p}_2) = 2 = N(\langle a + b\tau \rangle) = \left(a + \frac{b}{2}\right)^2 + 23\left(\frac{b}{2}\right)^2.$$

Multiplying the equation by 4, we deduce that

$$(2a+b)^2 + 23b^2 = 8.$$

However, there are no integers a, b such that  $b \equiv c \mod 2$  satisfying  $c^2 + 23b^2 = 8$ , so  $\mathfrak{p}_2$  is not principal. We can show in the same way that  $\mathfrak{p}_2^2$  is not principal. What about  $\mathfrak{p}_3^2$ ? In this case, we have to find integers b, c of the same parity satisfying

$$c^2 + 23b^2 = 32,$$

which has the solutions  $b = \pm 1$ ,  $c = \pm 3$ . Using this, we can show that  $\mathfrak{p}_2^3 \sim O_K$ , so  $\operatorname{Cl}(K) \cong \mathbb{Z}/3$  (course work 5).

## 7. Application to Diophantine Equations

The aim of this section is to prove the following result:

**Proposition 7.1.** Let d < -1 be a negative square-free integer which is congruent to 2 or 3 (mod 4), and suppose there exist integers x, y such that

$$y^3 = x^2 - d.$$

Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ . If the class number  $h_K$  is not divisible by 3, then there exists  $\alpha \in O_K$  such that  $x + \sqrt{d} = \alpha^3$ .

**Corollary 7.2.** Under the assumptions of the proposition, there exists  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that

$$x = n(n^2 + 3d)$$
 and  $3n^2 = -d \pm 1$ .

*Proof.* Write  $\alpha = n + m\sqrt{d}$ . Then

$$x + \sqrt{d} = \alpha^3 = n(n^2 + 3m^2d) + m(3n^2 + m^2d)\sqrt{d}$$

which implies that

$$m(3n^2 + m^2d) = 1$$
 and  $n(n^2 + 3m^2d) = x$ .

We deduce that  $m = \pm 1$ , and so

$$-d = 3n^2 \pm 1$$
 and  $x = n(n^2 + 3d)$ 

Before we prove Proposition 7.1, let us see one nice application:

**Theorem 7.3.** The equation  $y^3 = x^2 + 10$  has no integer solutions.

*Proof.* We saw above that for  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{-10})$ , we have  $h_K = 2$ . We now argue by contradiction. Suppose that there exist  $x, y \in \mathbb{Z}$  which satisfy the equation. Since  $3 \nmid 2$ , there exists  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that  $3n^2 = 10 \pm 1$ . But this is clearly nonsense.

In order to prove Proposition 7.1, we need a couple of lemmas:

**Lemma 7.4.** Let K be a number field with ring of integers  $O_K$ , and let  $I_1$ ,  $I_2$  be comprime ideals such that  $I_1I_2 = J^k$  for some ideal J and some k > 0. Then there exist ideals  $J_1$ ,  $J_2$  such that  $I_1 = J_2^k$  and  $I_2 = J_2^k$ .

Proof. Exercise.

**Lemma 7.5.** Let K be a number field, and let I be a non-zero ideal of  $O_K$ . If  $I^k$  is principal for some k > 1 which is coprime to  $h_K$ , then I is principal.

*Proof.* Clear from group theory.

Proof of Proposition 7.1: Suppose there exist  $x, y \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that  $y^3 = x^2 - d$ . We first observe that y is odd, since otherwise  $x^2 \equiv 2$  or 3 (mod 4), which is impossible. Secondly, if there is a prime number p which divides both x and y, then  $p^2$  divides  $(x^2 - y^3) = d$ , which is a contradiction.

We now factorise the equation in  $O_K$ , where  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{-d})$ :

$$y^3 = (x + \sqrt{d})(x - \sqrt{d}).$$

Claim. The ideals  $\langle x + \sqrt{d} \rangle$  and  $\langle x - \sqrt{d} \rangle$  are coprime.

Proof of claim. If there are not coprime, then there is a prime ideal  $\mathfrak{p} \subset O_K$  which contains both  $x + \sqrt{d}$  and  $x - \sqrt{d}$ , which implies that  $\mathfrak{p}$  contains both 2x and y. Since  $\mathfrak{p}$  is prime, one of 2 and x must be in  $\mathfrak{p}$ . If  $2 \in \mathfrak{p}$ , then since y odd, we also have  $1 \in \mathfrak{p}$ , which is impossible. Hence  $x \in \mathfrak{p}$ . Since x, y are integers, we deduce that  $x, y \in \mathfrak{p} \cap \mathbb{Z} = p\mathbb{Z}$  for some prime number p. But this contradicts x and y being coprime and hence proves the claim.

We deduce that

$$\langle y \rangle^3 = \langle x + \sqrt{d} \rangle \langle x - \sqrt{d} \rangle,$$
<sup>48</sup>

so Lemma 7.4 implies that  $\langle x + \sqrt{d} \rangle = I^3$  for some ideal I. Now  $I^3$  is principal, so since  $3 \nmid h_K$ , I itself is principal by Lemma 7.5, i.e.  $I = \langle \alpha \rangle$  for some  $\alpha \in O_K$ , and so

$$\langle x + \sqrt{d} \rangle = \langle \alpha^3 \rangle,$$

which implies that there exists a unit  $u \in O_F$  such that  $a + \sqrt{d} = u\alpha^3$ . But by Proposition 4.2, we know that  $O_K^{\times} = \{\pm 1\}$ . Replacing  $\alpha$  by  $-\alpha$ , if necessary, proves the result.

# 8. Applications to Fermat's last Theorem

In this section we want to use the theory of cyclotomic fields to prove a special case of Fermat's last theorem.

8.1. Basic properties of cyclotomic fields. Let  $p \geq 3$  be an odd prime, and let  $\zeta = e^{2\pi i/p}$  and  $F = \mathbb{Q}(\zeta)$ . We saw already in Section 3.3 that  $O_F = \mathbb{Z}[\zeta]$ , and that

$$\Delta_F = (-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}} p^{p-2}.$$

**Remark 8.1.** In fact, se saw that  $\{1, 1 - \zeta, \dots, (1 - \zeta)^{p-1}\}$  is an integral basis. But this is clearly equivalent.

We will need the following two results:

(1) The ideal  $\langle 1-\zeta \rangle$  is prime. Lemma 8.2. (2) Let r, s be integers, both of them coprime to p. Then

$$\frac{\zeta^r - 1}{\zeta^s - 1} \in O_F^{\times}$$

Proof. Exercise.

**Lemma 8.3.** The only roots of unity in  $O_F$  are of the form  $\pm \zeta^s$  for some  $s \in \mathbb{Z}$ .

Proof. Exercise.

**Lemma 8.4.** There exists  $u \in O_F^{\times}$  such that  $p = u(1 - \zeta)^{p-1}$ .

Proof. Exercise.

8.2. Units in  $O_F$ . We start with the following general observation.

**Lemma 8.5.** Let K be a number field, and let  $N \ge 1$ . Then there are only finitely many  $\alpha \in O_K$  such that all conjugates of  $\alpha$  have complex absolute value  $\leq N$ .

Proof. Exercise.

Lemma 8.6. (1) Let  $\alpha$  be an algebraic integer (not necessarily in F) such that all its conjugates have complex absolute value 1. Then  $\alpha$  is a root of unity.

(2) Let  $u \in O_F^{\times}$ . Then  $\frac{u}{\overline{u}}$  is a root of unity.

*Proof.* (i) Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\alpha)$ , and let

 $X = \{\beta \in O_K : \text{all conjugates of } \beta \text{ have complex absolute value } \leq 1\};$ 

note that X is finite by Lemma 8.5. Now clearly  $\alpha^n \in X$  for all  $n \ge 1$ , so since X is finite, there exist  $m, n \ge 1, m > n$  such that  $\alpha^m = \alpha^n$ , i.e.  $\alpha^{m-n} = 1$ .

(ii) Clearly F is a Glois extension of  $\mathbb{Q}$ , and the conjugates of  $x = \frac{u}{\overline{u}}$  are  $\{\sigma(x) : \sigma \in \operatorname{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})\}$ . Now complex conjecugation is an element of the Galois group, and the Galois group is abelian, which implies that  $\sigma(\bar{u}) = \sigma(u)$  for all  $\sigma$ , and hence

$$\sigma\left(\frac{u}{\bar{u}}\right) = \sigma(u)/\overline{\sigma(u)},$$

which clearly has absolute value 1. We therefore conclude by (i).

**Proposition 8.7.** Let  $u \in O_F^{\times}$ . Then there exists  $v \in O_F^{\times}$  such that  $\overline{v} = v$ , and  $r \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that

$$u = \zeta^r . v_{49}$$

Lecture 27

*Proof.* By Lemma 8.6,  $\frac{u}{\bar{u}}$  is a root of unity in  $O_F$  and hence equal to  $\pm \zeta^s$  for some  $s \in \mathbb{Z}$  by Lemma 8.3. Assume that

$$\frac{u}{\bar{u}} = -\zeta^s.$$

Since  $O_F = \mathbb{Z}[\zeta]$ , there exist  $a_0, \ldots, a_{p-2} \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that

 $u = a_0 + a_1\zeta + \dots + a_{p-2}\zeta^{p-2} \qquad \Rightarrow \qquad u = a_0 + a_1 + \dots + a_{p-2} \pmod{\langle 1 - \zeta \rangle}.$ 

Similarly,

 $\bar{u} \equiv a_0 + a_1 + \dots + a_{p-2} \pmod{\langle 1-\zeta \rangle} \equiv u \pmod{\langle 1-\zeta \rangle} \equiv -\zeta^s \bar{u} \pmod{\langle 1-\zeta \rangle} \equiv -\bar{u} \pmod{\langle 1-\zeta \rangle}.$ Hence  $2\bar{u} \in \langle 1-\zeta \rangle$ . Now  $\langle 1-\zeta \rangle$  is a prime ideal by Lemma 8.2; since  $2 \notin \langle 1-\zeta \rangle \cap \mathbb{Z} = p\mathbb{Z}$ , we deduce that  $\bar{u} \in \langle 1-\zeta \rangle$ . But  $\bar{u} \in O_F^{\times}$ , which gives a contradiction.

Hence  $\frac{u}{\overline{u}} = \zeta^s$  for some  $s \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Let  $r \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that  $2r = s \pmod{p}$ , and let  $v = \zeta^{-r}u$ . Then

$$\zeta^r v = u$$
 and  $\bar{v} = \zeta^r \bar{u} = \zeta^r \zeta^{-s} u = \zeta^r \zeta^{-2r} u = \zeta^{-r} u = v.$ 

#### 8.3. Fermat's last theorem for regular primes.

**Definition 8.8.** A prime  $p \ge 3$  is regular if the class number of  $\mathbb{Q}(\zeta_p)$  is not divisible by p.

**Example 8.9.** The following primes are known to be regular: 3, 5, 7, 11, 13, 17, 19, 23, 29 31, 41; on the other hand, the primes 37, 59, 67, 101, 103 are not regular. In 1964, Siegel conjectured that roughly 61% of primes should be regular, but it is not even known whether there are infinitely many regular primes. On the other hand, it is known that there are infinitely many irregular primes.

**Remark 8.10.** The arithmetic of the fields  $\mathbb{Q}(\zeta_p)$  is closely related to the Bernoulli numbers  $B_i$ , which are the coefficients of the generating series

$$\frac{t}{e^t - 1} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{B_k}{k!} t^k.$$

Kummer proved that p is regular if and and only if it does not divide the denominator of  $B_2, B_4, \ldots, B_{p-3}$ .

We want to prove the following weak form of Fermat's last theorem:

**Theorem 8.11.** Let p be a regular prime > 3, and let  $x, y, z \in \mathbb{Z}$ , non of which are divisible by p. Then

$$x^p + y^p \neq z^p$$

**Lemma 8.12.** (1) Let  $p \ge 5$  and  $F = \mathbb{Q}(\zeta)$ . Let  $a_0, \ldots, a_{p-1} \in \mathbb{Z}$ , and assume that at least one of them is zero. Suppose that m is an integer such that

$$a_0 + \dots + a_{p-1}\zeta^{p-1} \in \langle m \rangle.$$

Then  $a_i \in m\mathbb{Z}$  for all i.

(2) Let  $\alpha \in O_F$ . Then there exists  $a \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that  $\alpha^p = a \pmod{\langle p \rangle}$ .

*Proof.* (i) Suppose that  $a_r = 0$  for some  $0 \le r \le p - 1$ . Multiply through by  $\zeta^{p-1-r}$  to reduce to the case  $a_{p-1} = 0$ . The statement then easily follows from the fact that  $O_F = \mathbb{Z}[\zeta]$ .

(ii) Write

$$\alpha = a_0 + \dots + a_{p-2}\zeta^{p-2}$$

for some  $a_i \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Then

$$\alpha^p \equiv a_0^p + a_1^p \zeta^p + \dots + a_{p-2}^p \zeta^{p(p-2)} \pmod{\langle p \rangle}.$$

But

$$a_0^p + a_1^p \zeta^p + \dots + a_{p-2}^p \zeta^{p(p-2)} = a_0^p + a_1^p + \dots + a_{p-2}^p.$$

**Lemma 8.13.** Suppose that Theorem 8.11 is false. Then there exist x, y, z, non of which is divisible by p, such that

$$x^p + y^p = z^p$$

and which also satisfy the following two conditions:

- (1)  $x \not\equiv y \pmod{p}$ , and
- (2) x, y are coprime.

*Proof.* Suppose that we have x, y, z, non of which is divisible by p, such that

$$x^p + y^p = z^p.$$

Claim. It is impossible that  $x \equiv y \equiv -z \pmod{p}$ .

Proof of claim. If  $x \equiv y \equiv -z \pmod{p}$ , then

 $-2z^p \equiv z^p \pmod{p} \quad \Rightarrow \quad 3z \equiv z^p \equiv 0 \pmod{p}.$ 

But since  $p \neq 3$  and  $p \nmid z$ , this gives a contradiction.

Therefore at least one of the triples (x, y, z) and (x, -z, -y) satisfies condition (1). Dividing through by the greatest common divisor ensures that condition (2) is also satisfied.

**Lemma 8.14.** Suppose that there are  $x, y, z \in \mathbb{Z}$  which satisfy the conditions of Lemma 8.13. If  $i, j \in \mathbb{Z}$  are integers such that  $i \neq j \pmod{p}$ , then the ideals  $\langle x + \zeta^i y \rangle$ ,  $\langle x + \zeta^j y \rangle$  in  $O_F$  are comprime.

*Proof.* We argue by contradiction. Suppose there exists a prime ideal  $\mathfrak{p} \subseteq O_F$  such that  $x + \zeta^i y \in \mathfrak{p}$  and  $x + \zeta^j y \in \mathfrak{p}$ . Suppose without loss of generality that i > j. Then

$$\zeta^{i}y - \zeta^{j}y = \zeta^{i}(1 - \zeta^{i-j})y = \zeta^{i}\frac{1 - \zeta^{i-j}}{1 - \zeta}(1 - \zeta)y.$$

Now  $\frac{1-\zeta^{i-j}}{1-\zeta} \in O_F^{\times}$  by Lemma 8.2, so since  $\mathfrak{p}$  is prime, either  $1-\zeta \in \mathfrak{p}$  or  $y \in \mathfrak{p}$ .

Similarly, we deduce that either  $1 - \zeta \in \mathfrak{p}$  or  $x \in \mathfrak{p}$ .

But if  $1 - \zeta \notin \mathfrak{p}$ , then  $x, y \in \mathfrak{p} \cap \mathbb{Z} = p\mathbb{Z}$ , which contradicts x and y being coprime. Hence  $1 - \zeta \in \mathfrak{p}$ , and so  $\mathfrak{p} = \langle 1 - \zeta \rangle$  since  $\langle 1 - \zeta \rangle$  is prime by Lemma 8.2. Therefore

$$x + y = x + \zeta^i y + (1 - \zeta^i) y \in \mathfrak{p}$$

and so  $x + y \in \mathfrak{p} \cap \mathbb{Z} = p\mathbb{Z}$ . But

$$z^p = x^p + y^p \equiv (x+y)^p \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$$

which is the required contradiction.

We can now prove Theorem 8.11:

*Proof.* Suppose that the Theorem is false. Then there exist  $x, y, z \in \mathbb{Z}$  satisfying the conditions of Lemma 8.13, and we know from Lemma 8.14 that the ideals

$$\langle x+y\rangle, \, \langle x+\zeta y\rangle, \, \langle x+\zeta^2 y\rangle, \dots, \, \langle x+\zeta^{p-1}y\rangle$$

are pairwise coprime. But

$$\prod_{i=0}^{p-1} (x+\zeta^i y) = x^p + y^p = z^p, \qquad \Rightarrow \prod_{i=0}^{p-1} \langle x+\zeta^i y\rangle = \langle z\rangle^p.$$

By Question 4 on Problem Sheet 7, we deduce that each of the factors is already a *p*th power:  $\langle x + \zeta^i y \rangle = I_i^p$  for some nonzero ideal  $I_i \subseteq O_F$ . In particular, we have  $I_1^p = \langle x + \zeta y \rangle$ , so since  $p \nmid h_F$  we deduce from Lemma 7.5 that  $I_1$  is itself principal, i.e.  $I_1 = \langle \alpha \rangle$  for some  $\alpha \in O_F$ . In other words, we have

$$x + \zeta y = u\alpha^p$$

for some  $u \in O_F^{\times}$ . By Proposition 8.7, we can write  $u = v\zeta^s$  for some  $s \in \mathbb{Z}$  and  $v \in O_F^{\times}$  which satisfies  $\overline{v} = v$ . By Lemma 8.12, we have

$$\alpha^p \equiv a \pmod{\langle p \rangle},$$

 $\mathbf{SO}$ 

$$x + y\zeta = \zeta^s v\alpha^p \equiv \zeta^s va \pmod{\langle p \rangle}.$$

Similarly, taking complex conjugates,

(16)  

$$\begin{aligned} x + \zeta^{-1}y &\equiv \zeta^{-s}va \pmod{\langle p \rangle} \\ \Rightarrow \quad \zeta^{-s}(x + \zeta y) &= \equiv \zeta^{s}(x + \zeta^{-1}y) \pmod{\langle p \rangle} \\ \Leftrightarrow \quad x + \zeta y - \zeta^{2s}x - \zeta^{2s-1}y \in \langle p \rangle \,. \end{aligned}$$

We will now do a case-by-case analysis to derive a contradiction to (16):

- (1)  $1, \zeta, \zeta^{2s}, \zeta^{2s-1}$  are all distinct. Then Lemma 8.12 (i) implies that  $x, y \in p\mathbb{Z}$ , contradicting the assumption that  $p \nmid x$  and  $p \nmid y$ .
- (2)  $1 = \zeta^{2s}$ . Then (16) implies that  $\zeta y \zeta^{-1} y \in \langle p \rangle$ , so again we deduce from Lemma 8.12 (i) implies that  $y \in p\mathbb{Z}$  contradiction.

Lecture 28

(3)  $1 = \zeta^{2s-1}$ : Then (16) implies that

$$(x-y) - (x-y)\zeta \in \langle p \rangle$$

so we deduce from Lemma 8.12 (i) that  $x - y \in p\mathbb{Z}$ , which contradicts the assumption that  $x \neq y$  $(\mod p).$ 

(4)  $\zeta = \zeta^{2s-1}$ . Then (16) implies that  $x - \zeta^2 x \in \langle p \rangle$ , so p|x by Lemma 8.12 (i), which again gives a contradiction.

These are all the cases (since  $1 \neq \zeta$  and  $\zeta^{2s} \neq \zeta^{2s-1}$ ), which finishes the proof.

8.4. Interlude: Fermat for n = 4. Recall the famous theorem of Pythagoras:

**Theorem 8.15.** Let  $\Delta_{abc}$  be a right-angled triangle with sides (a, b, c), c being the hypothenuse. Then  $a^2 = b^2 = c^2$ .

**Note 8.16.** The area of  $\Delta$  is equal to  $\frac{1}{2}ab$ .

**Definition 8.17.** A Pythagorean triple is a triple of positive rational numbers (a, b, c) which satisfy  $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$ 

**Definition 8.18.** A positive integer n is congruent if there exist a Pythagorean triple (a, b, c) such that  $n = Area(\Delta_{abc})$ 

Congruent number problem: Determine all congruent numbers.

#### Example 8.19.

- 6 is congruent: (a, b, c) = (3, 4, 5)
- 5 is congruent:  $(a, b, c) = (\frac{20}{3}, \frac{3}{2}, \frac{41}{6})$
- 127 is congruent:

$$u = \frac{305955626559373590335}{305713982408400781488}$$

$$b = \frac{611427964816801562976}{2409099421727351105}$$

 $c = \frac{186923531308991520213350616180076637262337}{736495378234043911137389188146160344240}$ 

**Theorem 8.20.** [Fermat, 1640] 1 is not congruent.

**Remark 8.21.** Theorem 8.20 is clearly equivalent to saying that there is no right-angled triangle with integer sides whose area is a square.

**Corollary 8.22.** There are no  $x, y, z \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$  such that  $x^4 + y^4 = z^4$ .

*Proof.* We argue by contradiction. Suppose  $\exists x, y, z \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$  such that

$$x^4 + y^4 = z^4.$$

Let  $a = z^4 - x^4$ ,  $b = 2x^2z^2$ ,  $c = z^4 + x^4$ . Then  $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$  and  $\frac{1}{2}ab = (xy^2z)^2$ , which gives a contradiction. 

The proof of Theorem 8.20 is based on a so-called descent argument, which is of huge importance in the theory of elliptic curves.

**Lemma 8.23.** Let (a, b, c) be a Pythagorean triple in the integers, and assume that a, b, c are pairwise coprime. Then there exist coprime integers m, n such that m + n is odd,  $a = m^2 - n^2$ , b = 2mn and  $c = m^2 + n^2$ .

*Proof.* First observe that a and b cannot have the same parity, so without loss of generality a is odd and b is even. Then c is odd, and  $c_a$ , c-a are even. It follows that  $\frac{c+a}{2}$  and  $\frac{c-a}{2}$  are integers, and they must be coprime since so are a and c.

Since  $b^2 = c^2 - a^2$ , we obtain

$$\left(\frac{b}{2}\right)^2 = \frac{c+a}{2} \cdot \frac{c-a}{2},$$

so by coprimality each of the two factors must be a square, say

$$\frac{c+a}{2} = m^2$$
 and  $\frac{c-a}{2} = n^2$ 

with m, n coprime. We can then check that m and n have the right properties.

We can now prove Theorem 8.20.

*Proof.* We argue by contradiction. Suppose there exists a rightangled triangle  $\Delta$  with integer sides (a, b, c) whose are is a square. By Lemma 8.23, there exist coprime integers m, n with m + n odd such that

$$(a, b, c) = (m^2 - n^2, 2mn, m^2 + n^2).$$

Now

Area = mn(m-n)(m+n)

and the factors are all pairwise coprime, each of them must be a square, say

$$m = x^2$$
,  $n = y^2$ ,  $m + n = u^2$ ,  $m - n = v^2$ .

Now u and v are odd and coprime, so the greatest common divisor of u + v and u - v is 2. But now

$$2y^{2} = u^{2} - v^{2} = (u+v)(u-v).$$

It follows that there exist integers r, s such that either

$$u + v, u - v) = (2r^2, 4s^2)$$
 or  $(u + v, u - v) = (4r^2, 2s^2).$ 

Assume that  $(u + v, u - v) = (2r^2, 4s^2)$ . Then

(

$$u = r^{2} + 2s^{2}, v = r^{2} - 2s^{2} \Rightarrow x^{2} = \frac{u^{2} + v^{2}}{2} = r^{4} + 4s^{4}.$$

Hence  $(r^2, 2s^2, x)$  are the integer sides of a right-angled triangle  $\Delta'$  with area  $(rs)^2$ . Observe that the hypothenuse x of  $\Delta'$  is strictly small than the hypothenuse of  $\Delta$ , since

$$x = \sqrt{m} < m^2 + n^2.$$

We can argue similarly when  $(u + v, u - v) = (4r^2, 2s^2)$ .

In other words, starting from  $\Delta$  we have produced a right-angled triangle  $\Delta'$  with integer sides whose area is a square with strictly smaller hypothenuse. Repeating this process, we get a strictly sequence of positive integers, which is a contradiction.

**Remark 8.24.** It is an open question to find an algorithm which determines whether or not a given number n is congruent. This is very closely related to the theory of elliptic curves and the Birch–Swinnerton-Dyer conjecture.

# 9. Units in number fields

9.1. Dirichlet's Unit Theorem. The goal of this chapter is to use lattice theory and Minkowski's lemma to study the group of units of a number field.

We start with the following trivial observation:

**Lemma 9.1.** Let L be a lattice in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , and let B be any bounded subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Then  $B \cap L$  is finite, i.e. B contains only finitely many points in L.

Let K be the number field of degree d, and let  $\sigma_1, \ldots, \sigma_d$  be the embeddings of K. Reorder these so that  $\sigma_1, \ldots, \sigma_r$  are real and  $\sigma_{r+1}, \ldots, \sigma_{r+2s}$  are complex, with  $\sigma_{r+s+i} = \bar{\sigma}_{r+i}$ . Recall the embedding  $\underline{\sigma} : K \to \mathbb{R}^{\oplus r} \oplus \mathbb{C}^{\oplus s} \cong \mathbb{R}^{\oplus d}$  defined by

$$\underline{\sigma}(x) = \begin{pmatrix} \sigma_1(x) \\ \vdots \\ \sigma_{r+s}(x) \end{pmatrix}.$$

**Definition 9.2.** The logarithmic embedding of K is the map  $\mathcal{L}: O_K^{\times} \to \mathbb{R}^{r+s}$  given by

$$x \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} \log |\sigma_1(x)| \\ \vdots \\ \log |\sigma_r(x)| \\ \log |\sigma_{r+1}(x)|^2 \\ \vdots \\ \log |\sigma_{r+s}(x)|^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Notice that  $\log |x|^2$  means  $\log(|x|^2)$ , not  $(\log x)^2$ .

**Proposition 9.3.** The logarithmic embedding is a group homomorphism. It its kernel is the finite group  $W_K$ , and its image is a discrete subgroup of  $\mathbb{R}^{r+s}$  contained in the subspace

$$\left\{ \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ \vdots \\ x_{r+s} \end{pmatrix} : \sum_{i=1}^{r+s} x_i = 0 \right\}.$$

(Note that this subspace is of dimension r + s - 1.)

*Proof.* The group homomorphism property is obvious from  $\log(xy) = \log(x) + \log(y)$ ; and the fact that the kernel of  $\mathcal{L}$  is  $W_K$  is Lemma 8.6 (i). The sum of the coordinates of  $\mathcal{L}(x)$  is given by

$$\log\left(\prod_{i=1}^{n} |\sigma_i(x)|\right) = \log|N(x)| = \log 1 = 0,$$

since every unit has norm ±1. (We use here that  $|\sigma_i(x)| = |\bar{\sigma}_i(x)|$  for every complex embedding  $\sigma_i$ .)

It remains to show that the image of  $\mathcal{L}$  is discrete. But this follows from Lemma 8.5, which implies that  $\mathcal{L}$  has finite intersection with any bounded set.

We need to following general result about discrete subgroups of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ :

**Lemma 9.4.** Let  $\Gamma$  be a discrete subgroup of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Then  $\Gamma \cong \mathbb{Z}^r$  for some  $r \leq n$ , where r is the dimension of the  $\mathbb{R}$ -subspace of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  spanned by  $\Gamma$ .

*Proof.* Let V be the subspace of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  spanned by the elements of  $\Gamma$ , and fix a basis  $b_1, \ldots, b_r$  of V contained in  $\Gamma$ . Then these generate a subgroup  $\Gamma'$  of  $\Gamma$ , and  $\Gamma' \cong \mathbb{Z}^r$ .

Let's define  $T' = \{\sum \lambda_i b_i : 0 \le \lambda_i < 1\}$  as usual. Then every element of V can be written in the form  $t' + \gamma'$  where  $\gamma' \in \Gamma'$  and  $t' \in T'$  (just chop off the integral parts of the coordinates).

Since T' is bounded and  $\Gamma$  is discrete, it follows that  $\Gamma/\Gamma'$  is finite, and hence  $\Gamma$  is finitely generated. Since  $\Gamma$  has no torsion elements (since it is a subset of a vector space), we deduce from the classification of finitely generated abelian groups that  $\Gamma$  is also isomorphic to  $\mathbb{Z}^r$ .

**Corollary 9.5** (Dirichlet's Unit Theorem, weak form). The group  $O_K^{\times}$  is isomorphic to  $W_K \times \mathbb{Z}^k$  for an integer k such that  $0 \leq r + s - 1$ .

*Proof.* Lemma 9.4 shows that Image( $\mathcal{L}$ ) must be isomorphic to  $\mathbb{Z}^k$  for some  $k \leq r+s-1$ , so  $O_K^{\times}/W_K \cong \mathbb{Z}^k$ . The result now follows by the classification of finitely-generated abelian groups.

**Theorem 9.6** (Dirichlet's Unit Theorem, strong form). The group  $O_K^{\times}$  is isomorphic to  $W_K \times \mathbb{Z}^{r+s-1}$ .

We will prove this result in the rest of this section. We need the following elementary lemma:

**Lemma 9.7.** Let  $k \ge 1$ , and let  $A = (a_{ij})_{1 \le i,j \le n}$  be a  $(n \times n)$ -matrix with coefficients in  $\mathbb{R}$  such that

- (1) The entries of every row of A sum to zero.
- (2) The diagonal entries of A are all positive.
- (3) The off-diagonal entries of A are all negative.

Then A has rank n-1.

*Proof.* It is sufficient to prove that the first n-1 columns of A are linearly independent. We argue by contradiction. For  $1 \leq j \leq n$ , write  $\mathbf{c}_j$  for the *j*th column of A, and suppose there are  $x_1, \ldots, x_n \in \mathbb{R}$ , not all zero, such that

$$\sum_{j=1}^{n-1} x_j \mathbf{c}_j = 0.$$

By rescaling, we may assume that there is an index k such that  $1 \le k \le n-1$  such that  $x_k = 1$  and  $x_j \le 1$  for all  $j \ne k$ . Since  $a_{kj} < 0$  for all  $j \ne k$ , we have

$$x_j a_{jk} \ge a_{jk} \qquad \forall j \neq k$$

Also, since k < n, the entry  $a_{k,n} < 0$ , and hence we have

$$\sum_{j=1}^{n-1} a_{kj} > \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{kj}.$$

It follows that

$$0 = \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} x_j a_{kj} \ge \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} a_{k,j} > \sum_{j=1}^n a_{kj} = 0,$$

which gives a contradiction.

**Proposition 9.8.** Let n = r + s, and let  $1 \le k \le r + s$ . Then given any  $\alpha \in O_K$ ,  $\alpha \ne 0$ , there exists  $\beta \in O_K, \ \beta \neq 0$ , satisfying the following properties:

(1) 
$$|N(\beta)| \leq \left(\frac{2}{\pi}\right)^s \sqrt{|\Delta_K|}$$

(1)  $|N(\beta)| \leq (\frac{z}{\pi}) \quad \sqrt{|\Delta_K|};$ (2) If  $\mathcal{L}(\alpha) = (a_1, \dots, a_n)$  and  $\mathcal{L}(\beta) = (b_1, \dots, b_n)$ , then  $b_i < a_i$  for all  $i \neq k$ .

*Proof.* To simplify the notation, let  $C = \left(\frac{2}{\pi}\right)^s \sqrt{|\Delta_K|}$ . For a point  $x \in \mathbb{R}^r \oplus \mathbb{C}^s$ , write  $x = (x_1, \ldots, x_n)$ . Let  $d = [K : \mathbb{Q}]$ , and for  $1 \le i \le n$ , define

$$\epsilon_i = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } 1 \le i \le r \\ 2 & \text{if } r < i \le r \end{cases}$$

Let  $a'_1, \ldots, a'_n \in \mathbb{R}$  auch that  $a'_i < a_i$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . Define

$$C_{i} = \begin{cases} e^{a'_{i}} & \text{for } i \neq k \\ C \prod_{i \neq k} e^{-a'_{i}} & \text{for } i = k \end{cases}$$

so  $C_1 \cdots C_k = C$ . Define the subset  $E \subset \mathbb{R}^r \times \mathbb{C}^s$  by

$$E = \{(x_1, \dots, x_n) : |x_i|^{\epsilon_i} \le C_i\}.$$

It is then easy to see (exercise) that E is symmetric, bounded and convex, and we have<sup>5</sup>

$$\operatorname{vol}(E) = 2^r \pi^s \prod_i C_i = 2^{r+2s} (2^{-s} \sqrt{|\Delta_K|}) = 2^d \operatorname{vol}(\mathbb{R}^d / \underline{\sigma}(O_K)).$$

Hence E contains a non-zero point of  $\underline{\sigma}(O_K)$ . Let  $\beta$  be the corresponding element of  $O_K$ .

We now prove Theorem 9.6:

*Proof.* By Lemma 9.7, it is sufficient to prove that for all  $1 \le k \le r+s$ , there exists  $u \in O_K^{\times}$  such that

$$\mathcal{L}(u) = (u_1, \dots, u_{r+s})$$

with  $a_k > 0$  and  $a_i < 0$  for  $i \neq k$ .

Let  $\alpha_0 \in O_K$  be non-zero. Applying Proposition 9.8 repeatedly, we find a sequence of non-zero elements  $\alpha_j \in O_K$  such that for all  $j \ge 1$  we have

- (1)  $|N(\alpha_j)| \leq C$ , with C as in Proposition 9.8, and
- (2)  $a_i(j) < a_i(j-1)$  for all  $i \neq k$ .

Here, we write  $\mathcal{L}(\alpha_j) = (a_1(j), \ldots, a_{r+s}(j))$ . Since there are only finitely many ideals of norm at most C, there must be distinct positive integers  $j_1 > j_2$  such that  $\langle \alpha_{j_1} \rangle = \langle \alpha_{j_2} \rangle$ . Let  $u = \frac{\alpha_{j_1}}{\alpha_{j_2}}$ , which clearly is in  $O_K^{\times}$ . Moreover, since

$$a_i(j_1) < a_i(j_2)$$
 for all  $i \neq k_i$ 

it follows that  $\mathcal{L}(u) = (u_1, \ldots, u_{r+s})$  with  $u_i < 0$  for  $i \neq k$ . Finally, observe that  $u_k > 0$ , since

$$\sum_{i=1}^{r+s} a_i = 0$$

by Proposition 9.3.

**Definition 9.9.** As in Theorem 9.6, write  $O_K^{\times} = W_K \times \mathbb{Z}^{r+s-1}$ . A set of generators of  $\mathbb{Z}^{r+s-1}$  is called  $a \ set \ of \ fundamental units \ of \ K.$ 

<sup>5</sup>Recall from the proof of Lemma 6.38 that  $vol(\underline{\sigma}) = s^{-s}\sqrt{|\Delta|}$ 

Lecture 31

 $\square$ 

#### 9.2. Units in real quadratic fields.

**Proposition 9.10.** Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ , where d > 1 is square-free. Then  $O_K^{\times} \cong \{\pm 1\} \times \mathbb{Z}$ , and there is a unique unit  $u \in O_K^{\times}$  such that u > 1 and which generates  $O_K^{\times}/\{\pm 1\}$ .

Definition 9.11. The unit u is called the fundamental unit.

*Proof.* Since  $K \subset \mathbb{R}$ , we have  $W_K = \{\pm 1\}$ , s = 0 and r = 1, so the structure of  $O_K^{\times}$  follows from Theorem 9.6.

Now it is easy to see that if u is any unit mapping to a generator of  $O_K^{\times}/\{\pm 1\}$ , then the other units with this property are  $\{u, -u, u^{-1}, -u^{-1}\}$ , and this set contains one element from each of the four intervals  $\{(-\infty, -1), (-1, 0), (0, 1), (1, \infty)\}$ . Hence there is a unique u > 1 with that property.  $\Box$ 

**Remark.** If we write the fundamental unit  $u = a + b\sqrt{d}$ , say with N(u) = +1, then we have

$$u^{-1} = a - b\sqrt{d}, \qquad -u = -a - b\sqrt{d}, \qquad -u^{-1} = -a + b\sqrt{d}$$

(and similarly when N(u) = -1.) Since the fundamental unit is the one of these four possibilities of largest value, we see that we must have a, b > 0.

**Proposition 9.12.** Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$  as above. Then the fundamental unit is given by  $a + b\sqrt{d}$ , where (a,b) is the solution to

$$a^2 - db^2 = \pm 1$$

with (a, b) positive integers (if  $d \not\equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ ) or half-integers of  $d \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$  having the smallest possible value of a.

*Proof.* If u is the fundamental unit, then any other unit v > 1 must be  $u^n$  for some n > 1, so in particular v > u. Thus u is the smallest unit u > 1. We now have to check that "smallest u" means "smallest a".

If N(u) = +1, then clearly also N(v) = +1. Write  $v = r + s\sqrt{d}$ ; we want to show that r > a. We argue by contradiction: suppose that  $r \le a$ . Then  $r^2 \le a^2$ , and hence

$$s^{2} = \frac{r^{2} - 1}{d} \le b^{2} = \frac{a^{2} - 1}{d},$$

and hence  $s \leq b$ . So  $r + s\sqrt{d} < a + b\sqrt{d}$ , which gives a contradiction.

If N(u) = -1, then the same argument shows that any other unit  $x + y\sqrt{d}$  of norm -1 must have x > a. Moreover,  $u^2$  is the smallest unit of norm +1, so running the same argument on units of norm +1 shows that  $u^2$  gives the solution to  $x^2 - dy^2 = +1$  with the smallest value of x. So it suffices to check that if we write

$$(a + b\sqrt{d})^2 = (a^2 + db^2) + 2ab\sqrt{d}$$

then  $a^2 + db^2 > a$ . But this is clear since  $a^2 + db^2 = 2a^2 + 1 > a$ .

Remark 9.13. The equation

$$x^2 - dy^2 = \pm 1$$

is called Pell's equation. We will study it in more detail in the next section.

**Example 9.14.** Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{2})$ . Then (a, b) = (1, 1) satisfies  $a^2 - 2b^2 = -1$ , so  $u = 1 + \sqrt{2}$  is the fundamental unit.

**Example 9.15.** Consider the field  $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{6})$ . Since  $6 \neq 1 \mod 4$ , we must look for solutions to  $a^2 - 6b^2 = \pm 1$  with a, b positive integers.

If a = 1, then  $6b^2 = 1 \pm 1$ , which gives only the trivial solution a = 1, b = 0 (which doesn't count, because we're looking for positive b).

If a = 2 then  $6b^2 = 2^2 \pm 1 = 3$  or 5, which doesn't work  $\notin$ 

If a = 3 then  $6b^2 = 3^2 \pm 1 = 8$  or 10,  $\notin$ 

If a = 4 then  $6b^2 = 4^2 \pm 1 = 15$  or  $17, \notin$ 

If a = 5, then  $6b^2 = 24$  or 26, and  $24 = 6 \times 2^2$ , so we've found a solution, and it's the smallest solution with a, b > 0. Thus  $5 + 2\sqrt{6}$  is the fundamental unit.

So the units u > 1 of  $\mathbb{Z}[\sqrt{6}]$  are precisely the elements  $(5 + 2\sqrt{6})^n$  for  $n \ge 1$ . Since  $5 + 2\sqrt{6}$  has norm +1, we conclude that every unit of  $\mathbb{Z}[\sqrt{6}]$  has norm +1. That is:

- The solutions to the Pell equation  $x^2 6y^2 = 1$  with  $x, y \in \mathbb{N}$  are given by  $x + y\sqrt{6} = (5 + 2\sqrt{6})^n$  for  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ ;
- The negative Pell equation  $x^2 6y^2 = -1$  has no solutions.

**Example 9.16.** Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{13})$ . Since  $13 \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ , we are looking for solutions to

 $a^2 - 13b^2 = \pm 1$ 

with a, b positive half-integers, or equivalently to  $a^2 - 13b^2 = \pm 4$  with a, b positive integers.

- If a = 1, then  $13b^2 = 1 \pm 4 4$
- If a = 2, then  $13b^2 = 4 \pm 4 \notin$

If a = 3, then  $13b^2 = 9 \pm 4$ , i.e.  $13b^2 = 5$  or 13, which has the solution (a, b) = (3, 1).

Hence  $u = \frac{3+\sqrt{13}}{2}$  is a fundamental unit, of norm -1.

Remark 9.17. Fundamental units can be quite large. For example,

- the fundamental unit of  $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{19})$  is  $170 + 39\sqrt{19}$ , and
- the fundamental unit of  $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{46})$  is  $24335 + 3588\sqrt{46}$ .

9.3. Solving the general Pell equation. Assume that d > 1 is a square-free integer  $\neq 1 \pmod{4}$ . Once you know the class group of  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$  and have determined its fundamental unit, you can find the integer solutions of

$$x^2 - dy^2 = n$$

for all n. This equation is called generalized *Pell's equation*.

**Remark 9.18.** The case when  $d \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$  is somewhat more complicated, since the ring of integers  $O_K$  allows half-integers.

We will now study in the details the equation

(17) 
$$x^2 - 10y^2 = n$$

for  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ .

**Note 9.19.** There exist x, y in the positive integers satisfying (17) if any only if there exists an element  $x + y\sqrt{10}$  of norm n.

Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{10})$ . We compute the Minkowski bound as 3.16, so we need to consider the primes  $\langle 2 \rangle$ and  $\langle 3 \rangle$ . We deduce from Dedekind's criterion that

$$\begin{array}{l} \langle 2 \rangle = \mathfrak{p}_2^2 & \text{with } \mathfrak{p}_2 = \langle \sqrt{10}, 2 \rangle \\ \langle 3 \rangle = \mathfrak{p}_3 \mathfrak{p}_3' & \text{with } \mathfrak{p}_3 = \langle 3, 1 + \sqrt{10} \rangle \text{ and } \mathfrak{p}_3' = \langle 3, 2 + \sqrt{10} \rangle \end{array}$$

It is easy to check that  $\mathfrak{p}_2$  is not principal. Now  $\mathfrak{p}'_3|\langle 2+\sqrt{10}\rangle$ , and  $N(\langle 2+\sqrt{10}\rangle)=6$ , which implies that

$$2 + \sqrt{10} \rangle = \mathfrak{p}_2 \mathfrak{p}_3'$$

We similarly deduce that

$$\mathfrak{p}_2\mathfrak{p}_3 = \langle 2 - \sqrt{10} \rangle$$

We deduce that  $\operatorname{Cl}(K) \cong C_2$ , generated by  $[\mathfrak{p}_2]$ .

To find the fundamental unit, we need to find solutions to the equation

$$a^2 - 10b^2 = \pm 1$$

in the positive integers.

• If 
$$a = 1$$
, then  $10b^2 = 1 \pm 1 = 0$  or 2 s

If a = 1, then 10b<sup>2</sup> = 1 ± 1 = 0 or 2 ∉
If a = 2, then 10b<sup>2</sup> = 4 ± 1 = 3 or 5 ∉
If a = 3, then 10b<sup>2</sup> = 9 ± 1 = 8 or 10, which has the solution b = 1/

Hence  $u = 3 + \sqrt{10}$  is the fundamental unit; observe that it has norm -1.

We now want to study the following question: For which  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$  is the generalized Pell equation

(18) 
$$x^2 - 10y^2 = n$$

solvable in  $\mathbb{N}$ , and what can we say about the solutions?

**Note 9.20.** Since the norm of the fundamental unit is -1, equation (18) is solvable for n is and only if it is solvable for -n. We hence restrict to the case  $n \ge 1$ .

• n = 1: The smallest norm 1 unit is  $u^2 = 19 + 6\sqrt{10}$ , so the solutions to

$$x^2 - 10y^2 = 1$$

are  $(19 + 6\sqrt{10})^m$  for m > 1;

• n = 2: we saw above that there is a unique ideal of norm 2, and it is not principal, so

$$x^2 - 10y^2 = 2$$

is not solvable.

• n = 3: we saw above that the ideals of norm 3 are not principal, so

$$x^2 - 10y^2 = 3$$

is not solvable.

n = 4: since ⟨2⟩ is the only ideal of norm 4, the solutions are just twice the solutions for n = 1, i.e.

$$2 \cdot (19 + 6\sqrt{10})^m$$

for  $m \geq 1$ .

n = 5: we see from Dedekind's criterion that (5) = p<sub>5</sub><sup>2</sup>, so p<sub>5</sub> = (5, √10) is the unique prime ideal of norm 5. Is it principal? We note that the principal ideal (√10) has norm 10, so

$$\langle \sqrt{10} \rangle = \mathfrak{p}_5 \mathfrak{p}_2,$$

i.e.  $\mathfrak{p}_5$  and  $\mathfrak{p}_2$  lie in the same ideal class, and hence  $x^2 - 10y^2 = 5$  has no solutions.

• n = 6: there are precisely two ideals of norm 6, namely  $\mathfrak{p}_2\mathfrak{p}_3$  and  $\mathfrak{p}_2\mathfrak{p}'_3$ . As seen above,

 $\mathfrak{p}_2\mathfrak{p}_3' = \langle 2 + \sqrt{10} \rangle$  and  $\mathfrak{p}_2\mathfrak{p}_3 = \langle 2 - \sqrt{10} \rangle$ .

Now  $N(2 \pm \sqrt{10}) = -6$ , so we multiply both generators by u to get elements of norm 6:

$$(2+\sqrt{10})(3+\sqrt{10}) = 16+5\sqrt{10}$$
 and  $(2-\sqrt{10})(3+\sqrt{10}) = (-1)(4+\sqrt{10}).$ 

We conclude that the positive integer solutions to  $x^2 - 10y^2 = 6$  are given by

$$\left\{ (16+5\sqrt{10}) \cdot (19+6\sqrt{10})^m : m \ge 1 \right\} \right\} \cup \left\{ (4+\sqrt{10}) \cdot (19+6\sqrt{10})^m : m \ge 1 \right\}.$$

Here's another example: let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{79})$ . In this field, the prime 2 is principal (exercise), and the prime 3 is split:

$$\langle 3 \rangle = \langle 3, 1 + \sqrt{79} \rangle \langle 3, 2 + \sqrt{79} \rangle.$$

Question: are these primes principal, or equivalently, does the equation

$$x^2 - 79y^2 = \pm 3$$

solutions in the integers?

Note 9.21. There is no solution to

$$x^2 - 79y^2 = +3 \pmod{4}.$$

What about  $x^2 - 79y^2 = -3$ ? The fundamental unit is  $u = 80 + 9\sqrt{79}$ , which has norm 1.

**Lemma 9.22.** If there exists an element  $z \in \mathbb{Z}[\sqrt{79}]$  with norm -3, then there is one which satisfies 1 < z < u.

Proof. Exercise.

**Lemma 9.23.** Let  $z = a + b\sqrt{79}$  be as in the lemma. Then

$$1 + \frac{3}{u} < 2b\sqrt{79} < 3 + u.$$

Proof. Exercise.

Explicitly, we have 0.057 < b < 9.169, which leaves  $1 \le b \le 9$  since  $b \in \mathbb{Z}$ . We can test explicitly that for none of these b there exists an  $a \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that  $a + b\sqrt{79}$  has norm -3, so the primes above 3 are not principal.

**Note 9.24.** On the other hand,  $x^2 - 79y^2 = -3$  has solutions (mod N) for all  $N \ge 1$ ! See problem sheet.

10. Zeta functions

### 10.1. The Riemann zeta function.

Definition 10.1. The Riemann zeta function is defined as

$$\zeta(z) = \sum_{n \ge 1} n^{-z}$$

Remark 10.2. We have the Euler product formula

$$\zeta(z) = \prod_p \frac{1}{1 - p^{-z}}$$

**Theorem 10.3.**  $\zeta(s)$  converges on  $\{z \in \mathbb{C} : \Re(z) > 1\}$ , and it satisfies

$$\operatorname{Res}_{z=1}\zeta(z) = \lim_{z \to 1} (z-1)\zeta(z) = 1.$$

*Proof.* Let z = a + bi with  $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$  and a > 1. Then

$$|\zeta(z)| = \left|\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^z}\right| \le \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \left|\frac{1}{k^z}\right| = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^a} = \zeta(a),$$

so it is sufficient to prove convergence for  $z \in \mathbb{R}_{>1}$ . Now  $\frac{1}{k^z}$  is monotonically decreasing as a function in k for k > 0, so

$$\frac{1}{(k+1)^z} < \int_k^{k+1} \frac{1}{x^z} dx < \frac{1}{k^z}.$$

Taking the sum over k gives the inequality

$$\begin{aligned} \zeta(z) - 1 &< \int_{1}^{\infty} \frac{dx}{x^{z}} < \zeta(z), \\ \Leftrightarrow \qquad \zeta(z) - 1 < \frac{1}{1 - z} < \zeta(z) \\ \Rightarrow \qquad \frac{1}{z - 1} < \zeta(z) < \frac{1}{z - 1} + 1 \end{aligned}$$

#### 10.2. The Dedekind zeta function.

**Definition 10.4.** Let K be a number field. Define the Dedekind zeta function of K to be

$$\zeta_K(z) = \sum_{\mathfrak{a}} \frac{1}{N(\mathfrak{a})^z}$$

where  $\mathfrak{a}$  ranges over all non-zero integral ideals of  $O_K$ .

Remark 10.5. Unique factorisation into prime ideals implies the product formula

$$\zeta_K(z) = \prod_{\mathfrak{p}} \frac{1}{1 - N(\mathfrak{p})^{-z}},$$

where  $\mathfrak{p}$  runs over all non-zero prime ideals of  $O_K$ .

In order to state the main result, we need to make some definitions.

**Definition 10.6.** Let  $\sigma_1, \ldots, \sigma_r$  be the real embeddings of K, and let  $\sigma_{r+1}, \ldots, \sigma_{r+s}$  be a selection of complex embeddings, where we choose precisely one embedding from each complex pair. Let  $\epsilon_1, \ldots, \epsilon_{r+s-1}$  be a set of fundamental units of K. Let M be the  $(r+s-1) \times (r+s)$ -matrix whose jth row is

$$(\log(\sigma_1(\epsilon_j),\ldots,\log(\sigma_r(\epsilon_j),2\log(\sigma_{r+1}(\epsilon_j),\ldots,2\log(\sigma_{r+s}(\epsilon_j))))))))$$

and let  $M_i$  be the matrix obtained from M by deleting the *i*th column. Define the regulator of K

$$R_K = |\det(M_i)|.$$

**Lemma 10.7.** The regulator is independent of *i* and of the coice of fundamental units.

*Proof.* Exercise.

The aim of this section is to prove the following result:

Lecture 33

**Theorem 10.8** (Analytic class number formula). The function  $\zeta_K(z)$  converges for  $\Re(z) > 1$ , and at z = 1 is has residue given by

$$\lim_{z \to 1} (z - 1)\zeta_K(z) = \frac{2^{r+s} \pi^s R_K h_k}{|W_K| \sqrt{|\Delta_K|}}.$$

Strategy. We write the sum

$$\zeta_K(z) = \sum_{A \in \operatorname{Cl}(K)} \left( \sum_{\mathfrak{c} \in A} \frac{1}{N(\mathfrak{c})^z} \right),$$

and we let  $\zeta_A(z) = \sum_{\mathfrak{c} \in A} \frac{1}{N(\mathfrak{c})^z}$ . We will show that

(19) 
$$\lim_{z \to 1} (z-1)\zeta_A(z) = \frac{2^{r+s} \pi^s R_K}{|W_K| \sqrt{|\Delta_K|}}$$

Since there are precisely  $h_K$  ideal classes, this proves Theorem 10.8.

**Lemma 10.9.** Choose an ideal  $\mathfrak{a} \in A^{-1}$ . Then multiplication by  $\mathfrak{a}$  gives a bijection between

 $\{integral \ ideals \ in \ A\} \quad \leftrightarrow \quad \{principal \ ideals \ divisible \ by \ \mathfrak{a}\},\$ 

so

$$\zeta_A(z) = N(\mathfrak{a})^z \sum_{\langle \alpha \rangle : \mathfrak{a} | \langle \alpha \rangle} \frac{1}{|N(\alpha)|^z}$$

Proof. Exercise.

**Definition 10.10.** Choose a generator for each principal ideal divisible by  $\mathfrak{a}$ , and write  $\mathcal{A}$  for the set of these generators.

Recall the r + 2s-dimensional real vector space  $K_{\infty} = \mathbb{R}^r \oplus \mathbb{C}^s$  and the embedding

$$\underline{\sigma}: K \to K_{\infty},$$
$$x \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} \sigma_1(x) \\ \vdots \\ \sigma_{r+s}(x) \end{pmatrix}$$

**Definition 10.11.** We define a norm on  $K_{\infty}$  by

$$N(\underline{\sigma}(x)) = |\sigma_1(x)\cdots\sigma_r(x)| \cdot |\sigma_{r+1}(x)|^2 \cdots |\sigma_{r+s}(x)|^2.$$

**Lemma 10.12.** We have  $N(\underline{\sigma}(x)) = N(x)$ .

*Proof.* Clear from the definition.

**Lemma 10.13.** Let  $\Theta = \{\underline{\sigma}(\alpha) : \alpha \in \mathcal{A}\}$ . Then

$$\zeta_A(z) = N(\mathfrak{a})^z \sum_{x \in \Theta} \frac{1}{|N(x)|^z}$$

# 10.3. Geometry of number fields.

**Definition 10.14.** A cone in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is a subset  $X \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  such that if  $x \in X$  and  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}_{>0}$ , then  $\lambda \cdot x \in X$ .

**Proposition 10.15.** Let X be a cone in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , and let  $F : X \to \mathbb{R}_{>0}$  be a function with the following property: if  $x \in X$  and  $\xi \in \mathbb{R}_{>0}$ , then

$$F(\xi \cdot x) = \xi^n \cdot x.$$

Assume that

$$T=\{x\in X:\,F(x)\leq 1\}$$

is bounded with volume  $\operatorname{vol}(T) > 0$ . Let  $\Gamma$  be a lattice in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , whose fundamental cell has volume  $\operatorname{vol}(\Gamma)$ . Then the function

$$\theta(z) = \sum_{x \in \Gamma \cap X} \frac{1}{F(x)^z}$$

converges for  $\Re(s) > 1$  and satisfies

$$\lim_{z \to 1} (z - 1)\theta(z) = \frac{\operatorname{vol}(T)}{\operatorname{vol}(\Gamma)}.$$

*Proof.* Observe that

$$\operatorname{vol}\left(\frac{1}{r}\Gamma\right) = \frac{\operatorname{vol}(\Gamma)}{r^n}.$$

Let N(r) be the number of lattice points from  $r^{-1}\Gamma$  lying in T:

$$N(r) = |r^{-1}\Gamma \cap T|$$

We can then cover T with N(r) translates of the fundamental domain of the scaled lattice  $r^{-1}\Gamma$ , and in this way obtain a tiling of T of total volume  $N(r)\frac{\operatorname{vol}(\Gamma)}{r^n}$ , so

(20) 
$$\operatorname{vol}(T) = \lim_{r \to \infty} N(r) \frac{\operatorname{vol}(\Gamma)}{r^n} = \operatorname{vol}(\Gamma) \cdot \lim_{r \to \infty} \frac{N(r)}{r^n}$$

Label the points of  $\Gamma \cap X$  such that

$$0 \le F(x_1) \le F(x_2) \le \dots,$$

and define  $r_k = F(x_k)^{\frac{1}{n}}$ . Claim. We have

$$\lim_{k \to \infty} \frac{k}{F(x_k)} = \frac{\operatorname{vol}(T)}{\operatorname{vol}(\Gamma)}$$

*Proof of claim:* Observe that by the assumption on the function F, we have

$$N(r) = \left| \left\{ x \in \Gamma \cap X : F(x) \le r^n \right\} \right|.$$

Hence for all  $\varepsilon > 0$ , we have

$$N(r_k - \varepsilon) \le k \le N(r_k)$$
  

$$\Rightarrow \quad \frac{N(r_k - \varepsilon)}{(r_k - \varepsilon)^n} \frac{(r_k - \varepsilon)^n}{r_k^n} \le \frac{k}{F(r_k)} \le \frac{N(r_k)}{r_k^n}$$

Letting  $k \to \infty$  finishes the proof in view of (20).

For the last statement, note that

$$\theta(z) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{F(x_k)^z}.$$

As in the proof of Theorem 10.3, we reduce to the case when  $z \in \mathbb{R}_{>1}$ . Now given  $\varepsilon > 0$ , by the claim there exists  $k_0$  such that for all  $k \ge k_0$  we have

(21) 
$$\left(\frac{\operatorname{vol}(T)}{\operatorname{vol}(\Gamma)} - \varepsilon\right)^{z} \frac{1}{k^{z}} < \frac{1}{F(x_{k})^{z}} < \left(\frac{\operatorname{vol}(T)}{\operatorname{vol}(\Gamma)} - \varepsilon\right)^{z} \frac{1}{k^{z}}.$$

Summing over k and using Theorem 10.3, we deduce that  $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{F(x_k)^z}$  converges for  $\Re(z) > 1$ . Similarly, multiplying (21) by (z-1) an detting  $z \to 1$  from the right implies that

$$\left(\frac{\operatorname{vol}(T)}{\operatorname{vol}(\Gamma)} - \varepsilon\right) \operatorname{Res}_{z=1} \zeta(z) \leq \lim_{z \to 1} (z-1)\theta(s) \leq \left(\frac{\operatorname{vol}(T)}{\operatorname{vol}(\Gamma)} + \varepsilon\right) \operatorname{Res}_{z=1} \zeta(z),$$
$$\lim_{z \to 1} (z-1)\theta(z) = \frac{\operatorname{vol}(T)}{\operatorname{vol}(\Gamma)}$$

 $\mathbf{SO}$ 

as claimed.

We now carefully choose F, X and  $\Gamma$ .

**Definition 10.16.** Define the logarithmic map

$$\mathcal{L}: K_{\infty} - \{0\} \to \mathbb{R}^{r+s}$$

given by

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ \vdots \\ x_r \\ x_{r+1} \\ \vdots \\ x_{r+s} \end{pmatrix} \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} \log |\sigma_1(x)| \\ \vdots \\ \log |\sigma_r(x)| \\ \log |\sigma_r(x)|^2 \\ \vdots \\ \log |\sigma_{r+1}(x)|^2 \\ \vdots \\ \log |\sigma_{r+s}(x)|^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Lemma 10.17. Let  $\lambda = (1, ..., 1; 2...2)^t$ , and for  $1 \le i \le r + s - 1$ , let  $u_i = \mathcal{L}(\underline{\sigma}(\epsilon_i))$ . Then  $\{\lambda, u_1, ..., u_{r+s-1}\}$ 

is a basis of  $\mathbb{R}^{r+s}$ , so for every  $x \in K^{\times}$  there exist unique  $\gamma_0, \ldots, \gamma r + s - 1 \in \mathbb{R}$  such that (22)  $\mathcal{L}(x) = \gamma_0 \lambda + \gamma_1 u_1 + \cdots + \gamma_{r+s-1} \mathcal{L} u_{r+s-1}.$ 

*Proof.* By ...,  $\{u_1, \ldots, u_{r+s-1}\}$  as a basis for the hyperplane

$$\left\{ \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ \vdots \\ x_{r+s} \end{pmatrix} : \sum_{i=1}^{r+s} x_i = 0 \right\}$$

The result follows.

**Definition 10.18.** Define the set  $X \subset K_{\infty}$  to be the set of elements  $x \in K_{\infty}$  which satisfy

- (1)  $N(x) \neq 0;$
- (2) if we write  $\mathcal{L}(x)$  of the form (22), then  $0 \leq \gamma_i < 1$ ;
- (3)  $0 \le \arg(x_1) < \frac{2\pi}{|W_K|}$

**Note 10.19.** Unless r = 0, we have  $x_1 \in \mathbb{R}$ , so condition (3) is automatically satisfied.

**Lemma 10.20.** The set X is a cone.

Proof. Exercise.

**Proposition 10.21.** Let  $\alpha \in O_K - \{0\}$ . Then  $\underline{\sigma}(\alpha)$  can be uniquely written of the form

$$\underline{\sigma}(\alpha) = x \cdot \underline{\sigma}(u),$$

where  $x \in X$  and  $u \in O_K^{\times}$ .

Proof. Write

$$\mathcal{L}(\underline{\sigma}(\alpha)) = c_0 \lambda + c_1 u_1 + \dots + c_{r+s-1} u_{r+s-1}$$

For  $1 \leq i \leq r+s-1$ , write

$$x_i = m_i + \gamma_i$$
 with  $m_i \in \mathbb{Z}$  and  $0 \le \gamma_i < 1$ ,

and let  $\varepsilon = \epsilon_1^{m_1} \dots \epsilon_{r+s-1}^{m_{r+s-1}}$ . Then  $z = \sigma(\alpha \varepsilon^{-1})$  satisfies conditions (1) and (2) of Definition 10.18. We now correct  $\arg(z_1)$ : let r be the unique integer such that

$$0 \le \arg(z_1) - \frac{2\pi r}{|W_K|} < \frac{2\pi}{|W_K|},$$

and choose a root of unity w such that  $\sigma_1(w) = e^{\frac{2\pi i}{|W_K|}}$ . Then

$$z \cdot \underline{\sigma}(w^{-r}) = \underline{\sigma}(\alpha \varepsilon^{-1} w^{-r}) \in X,$$

 $\underline{\sigma}(\alpha) = x \cdot \underline{\sigma}(u)$ 

so if we let  $u = \varepsilon \cdot w^r$ , then

as required.

**Definition 10.22.** Let  $\Gamma = \underline{\sigma}(\mathfrak{a}) = \{\underline{\sigma}(x) : x \in \mathfrak{a}\}.$ 

Corollary 10.23. We have

$$\zeta_A(z) = N(\mathfrak{a})^z \sum_{x \in X \cap \Gamma} \frac{1}{N(x)^z},$$

and  $\zeta_A(z)$  converges for  $\Re(z) > 1$ , and its residue at z = 1 is given by  $\frac{\operatorname{vor}(T)}{\operatorname{vol}(\Gamma)}$ . *Proof.* Immediate from Lemma 10.13.

In order to apply Proposition 10.15, we need to compute the volumes:

**Lemma 10.24.** Let  $T = \{x \in X : N(x) < 1\}$ . Then we have

$$\operatorname{vol}(T) = \frac{2^r \pi^s R_K}{|W_K|}$$

*Proof.* Omitted, since fairly elementary but tedious.

**Lemma 10.25.** The fundamental cell of the lattice  $\Gamma$  has volume

$$\operatorname{vol}(\Gamma) = 2^{-s} N(\mathfrak{a}) \sqrt{\Delta_K}.$$

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{B}$  be a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis of  $\mathfrak{a}$ . Then by Proposition 6.37, we have

$$\operatorname{vol}(\Gamma) = 2^{-s} \sqrt{\Delta[\mathcal{B}]}$$

But  $\Delta[\mathcal{B}] = N(\mathfrak{a})^2 \Delta_K$  by Proposition 4.65.

Corollary 10.26. We have

$$\lim_{z \to 1} (z - 1)\zeta_A(z) = \frac{2^{r+s} \pi^s R_K}{|W_K| \sqrt{|\Delta_K|}}.$$

**Example 10.27.** Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{m})$ , where  $m \in \mathbb{Z} - \{0, 1\}$  is square-free.

• m > 0: then r = 2 and s = 0, and we have a fundamental unit  $\epsilon \in O_K^{\times}$ , and  $R_K = \log |\epsilon|$ . Then Theorem 10.8 says that

$$h_K = \frac{|\Delta_K|}{2\log|\epsilon|} \lim_{z \to 1} (z-1)\zeta_K(z).$$

• m < 0: then r = 0, s = 1, so we have

$$h_K = \frac{|\Delta_K|}{\pi \cdot |W_K|} \lim_{z \to 1} (z - 1)\zeta_K(z)$$

In order to evaluate  $\lim_{z\to 1} (z-1)\zeta_K(z)$ , we need to learn about Dirichlet characters and their L-functions.

# 10.4. Characters of finite abelian groups.

**Definition 10.28.** Let G be a finite abelian group, where we write the group operation multiplicatively. A character of G is a homomorphism

$$\chi: G \to \mathbb{C}^{\times}.$$

We say that  $\chi$  is trivial if  $\chi(g) = 1$  for all  $g \in G$ .

**Note 10.29.** If  $\chi_1, \chi_2$  are characters of G, then so is their product  $\chi_1\chi_2$ .

**Lemma 10.30.** The set of characters of G forms an abelian group under multiplication, denoted  $\hat{G}$ .

**Lemma 10.31.** There exists a non-canonical isomorphism  $G \cong \hat{G}$ .

*Proof.* Since every finite abelian group is a direct product of cyclic groups, we may assume that  $G \cong \mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$ . Then a character of G is determined by its value at  $1 \in \mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$ , which is necessarily an nth root of unity; conversely, if  $\zeta$  is any nth root of unity, then  $1 \mapsto \zeta$  defines a character of G. Thus  $\hat{G}$  is canonically isomorphic to the group of nth roots of unity, which is non-canonically isomorphic to  $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$ .  $\Box$ 

**Proposition 10.32.** Let H be a subgroup of G. Then every character of H extends to a character of G.

*Proof.* We use induction on the index [G : H] of H in G. If [g : H] = 1, there is nothing to prove. Otherwise let  $g \in G$  not contained in H, and let n be the smallest integer > 1 such that  $g^n \in H$ . Let  $\chi$  be a character of H, and let  $\gamma = \chi(g^n)$ . We can then choose an element  $\beta \in \mathbb{C}^{\times}$  such that  $\beta^n = \gamma$ . Let H' be the subgroup of G generated by H and g; then every element  $h' \in H'$  can be written as  $h' = hg^a$  for some  $a \in \mathbb{Z}$  and  $h \in H$ . Put

$$\chi'(h') = \chi(h)w^a.$$

This does not depend on the decomposition of h' (check), and  $\chi'$  is a character of H' extending H. Since [G:H'] < [G:H], the conclude by inductive hypothesis.

Remark 10.33. Restriction defines a homomorphism

$$\rho: \hat{G} \to \hat{H},$$

which is surjective by Proposition 10.32. Moreover, the kernel of  $\rho$  is the set of characters which are trivial on H, so ker $(\rho) \cong G/H$ . We hence an exact sequence

$$1 \to \hat{G}/\hat{H} \to \hat{G} \to \hat{H} \to 1.$$

**Note 10.34.** Fpr any finite abelian group, there is a natural morphism  $G \to \hat{\hat{G}}$  sending  $g \in G$  to the character  $\chi \mapsto \chi(g)$  on  $\hat{G}$ .

**Proposition 10.35.** The canonical morphism  $G \to \hat{G}$  is an isomorphism.

*Proof.* Since G and  $\hat{G}$  have the same cardinality, it suffices to show that  $G \to \hat{G}$  is injective. In other words, for any non-trivial  $g \in G$ , we have to construct  $\chi \in \hat{G}$  such that  $\chi(g) \neq 1$ . Let  $H = \langle g \rangle \subseteq G$ . By Remark 10.33, there exists  $\chi \in \hat{G}$  with non-trivial image in  $\hat{H}$ , and clearly  $\chi(g) \neq 1$ .

**Proposition 10.36.** Let G be a finite abelian group of size n, and let  $\chi \in \hat{G}$ . We have

(1) 
$$\sum_{g \in G} \chi(g) = \begin{cases} n & \text{if } \chi = 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

*Proof.* (1) is obvious. For (2), choose  $y \in G$  such that  $chi(y) \neq 1$ . Then

$$\begin{split} \chi(y)\sum_{g\in G}\chi(g) &= \sum_{g\in G}\chi(gy) = \sum_{g\in G}\chi(g), \\ &= 0, \text{ which implies that } \sum_{g\in G}\chi(g) = 0 \text{ since } \chi(y) \neq 1. \end{split}$$

**Corollary 10.37.** Let  $g \in G$ . Then

so  $(\chi(y) - 1) \sum_{g \in G} \chi(g)$ 

$$\sum_{\chi \in \hat{G}} \chi(g) = \begin{cases} n & \text{if } g = 1\\ 0 & \text{if } g \neq 1 \end{cases}$$

*Proof.* Apply Proposition 10.36 to  $\hat{G}$ .

10.5. Dirichlet characters.

**Definition 10.38.** A Dirichlet character is a character  $\chi$  of the group  $(\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})^{\times}$  for some integer  $N \ge 1$ . The principal or trivial Dirichlet character (mod N) if given by

$$\chi(m)=0 \quad \textit{if} \ (m,N)\neq 1 \qquad \textit{and} \quad \chi(m)=1 \quad \textit{if} \ (m,N)=1.$$

Note 10.39. For N|M,  $\chi$  induces a character for  $(\mathbb{Z}/M\mathbb{Z})^{\times}$ , from the natural surjection  $(\mathbb{Z}/M\mathbb{Z})^{\times} \to (\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})^{\times}$ .

**Definition 10.40.** We say that  $\chi : (\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})^{\times} \to \mathbb{C}$  is primitive if it is not induced by any characters of  $(\mathbb{Z}/d\mathbb{Z})^{\times}$  for d|N and  $d \neq N$ ; in this case, we say that  $\chi$  has conductor N and write  $f_{\chi} = N$  We say  $\chi$  is even if  $\chi(-1) = 1$  and odd otherwise.

**Note 10.41.** Given a Dirichlet character  $\chi : (\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})^{\times} \to \mathbb{C}^{\times}$ , we can consider it as a function  $\chi : \mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{C}$  by setting  $\chi(a) = 0$  if a is not comprime to  $f_{\chi}$ . Note that  $\chi$  is multiplicative:

$$\chi(mn) = \chi(m)\chi(n).$$

- **Example 10.42.** (1) Let  $\chi : (\mathbb{Z}/8\mathbb{Z})^{\times} \to \mathbb{C}^{\times}$  be defined by  $\chi(1) = 4, \chi(3) = -1, \chi(5) = 1$  and  $\chi(7) = -1$ . Then  $f_{\chi} = 4$ .
  - (2) Let p be an odd prime. Then the Legendre symbol  $a \mapsto \left(\frac{a}{p}\right)$  defines a Dirichlet character of conductor p.

The following example will be very important later:

**Definition 10.43.** • Let  $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ , and let  $b \in \mathbb{Z}_{>1}$  be odd; write  $b = p_1^{e_1} \cdots p_n^{e_n}$ . Define the Jacobi symbol

$$\left(\frac{a}{b}\right) = \left(\frac{a}{p_1}\right)^{e_1} \cdots \left(\frac{a}{p_n}\right)^{e_n}$$

In other words, the Jacobi symbol is an extension of the Legendre symbol defined in Section 5.

• For  $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ , we extend the Jacobi symbol to include the even prime:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \frac{a}{2} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } 2|a \\ 1 & \text{if } a \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{8} \\ -1 & \text{if } a \equiv \pm 3 \pmod{8} \end{cases}$$

**Lemma 10.44.** For  $b \in \mathbb{Z}_{>1}$ , the map  $a \mapsto \left(\frac{a}{b}\right)$  is a Dirichlet character.

**Definition 10.45.** Let  $\chi, \psi$  be two Dirichlet chracters with conductors  $f_{\chi}$  and  $f_{\psi}$ . Consider their product  $\gamma : (\mathbb{Z}/\text{lcm}(f_{\chi}, f_{\psi})\mathbb{Z})^{\times} \to \mathbb{C}^{\times}.$ 

Define  $\chi\psi$  to be the primitive character associated to to  $\gamma$ .

Lecture 35

**Note 10.46.** In general, the conductor of  $\chi\psi$  is smaller than  $\operatorname{lcm}(f_{\chi}, f_{\psi})$ .

**Example 10.47.** Define  $\chi \pmod{12}$  by

$$\chi(1) = 1, \quad \chi(5) = -1, \quad \chi(7) = -1, \quad \chi(11) = 1$$

ad define  $\psi \pmod{3}$  by

$$\psi(1) = \psi(2) = -1.$$

Then  $\chi\psi$  on  $\mathbb{Z}/12\mathbb{Z})^{\times}$  has values

$$\chi\psi(1) = 1, \quad \chi\psi(5) = 1, \quad \chi\psi(7) = -1, \quad \chi\psi(11) = -1.$$

One can easily check (exercise) that  $\chi\psi$  has conductor 4, and  $\chi\psi(3) = -1$ . Warning. We have  $\chi\psi(3) = -1 \neq \chi(3)\psi(3) = 0$ .

# 10.6. Dirichlet *L*-functions.

**Definition 10.48.** Let  $\chi$  be a non-trivial Dirichlet character (mod N). Define the Dirchlet L-series attached to  $\chi$  as

$$L(\chi, s) = \sum_{n=1}^{+\infty} \frac{\chi(n)}{n^s}.$$

**Theorem 10.49.** The L-function  $L(\chi, s)$  converges absolutely for  $\Re(s) > 1$ , and it converges pointwise for  $\Re(s) > 0$ .

**Remark 10.50.** We have  $|\chi(n)| \in \{0,1\}$  for all n, so the absolute convergence follows from the convergence of  $\zeta(s)$  for  $\Re(s) > 1$ . (Exercise)

**Note 10.51.** Since  $\chi$  is multiplicative, we have

$$L(\chi, s) = \prod_{p} \frac{1}{1 - \chi(p)p^{-s}}$$

for  $\Re(s) > 1$ .

To prove pointwise convergence for  $\Re(s) > 0$ , we need some preliminary lemmas:

**Lemma 10.52.** Let  $\alpha, \beta, \sigma \in \mathbb{R}_{>0}$  with  $0 < \alpha < \beta$ . Then for all  $s \in \mathbb{C}$  with  $\Re(s) = \sigma$ , we have

$$|e^{-\alpha s} - e^{-\beta s}| \le \frac{|s|}{\sigma} (e^{\alpha \sigma} - e^{-\beta \sigma})$$

Proof. Not proven.

**Note 10.53.** In particular, setting  $\alpha = \log(m)$ ,  $\beta = \log(n)$ , with 0 < m < n, we have

$$|m^{-s} - n^{-s}| \le \frac{|s|}{\sigma}(m^{-\sigma} - n^{-\sigma}).$$

**Proposition 10.54** (Abel's summation formula). Let  $a_n, b_n \in \mathbb{C}$  for  $n \ge 1$ , and set

$$A_n = a_1 + \dots + a_n.$$

Then

$$\sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k b_k = A_n b_{n+1} - \sum_{k=1}^{n} A_k (b_{k+1} - b_k).$$

*Proof.* Let  $A_0 = 0$ . Then

$$\sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k b_k = \sum_{k=1}^{n} (A_k - A_{k-1}) b_k = \sum_{k=1}^{n} A_k b_k - \sum_{k=1}^{n} A_k b_{k+1} + A_n b_{n+1},$$

which is the right hand side of Abel's formula.

**Corollary 10.55.** Then sum  $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k b_k$  converges if both  $\sum_{k=1}^{+\infty} A_K(b_{k+1} - b_k)$  and  $\{A_n b_{n+1}\}$  are convergent.

**Proposition 10.56.** Let  $a_n \in \mathbb{C}$  for  $n \ge 1$ . If  $\{|A_n|\}$  is bounded, then the series  $\sum_{k=1}^{+\infty} a_n n^{-s}$  converges for  $\sigma = \Re(s) > 0$ .

Lecture 36

*Proof.* By assumption, there exists some C > 0 such that  $|A_n| \leq C$  for all  $n \geq 1$ . We will use Proposition 10.54 with  $b_n = n^{-s}$ . Then

$$|A_n b_{n+1}| = |A_n| \cdot |b_{n+1}| \le C(n+1)^{-\sigma} \to 0$$

as  $n \to +\infty$ . Hence the second condition of the proposition is satisfied. For the first condition, we apply to Chauchy convergence criterion to

$$\sum_{k=1}^{+\infty} A_k((k+1)^{-s} - k^{-s})).$$

For  $n \geq 1$ , let

$$S_n = \sum_{k=1}^n A_k((k+1)^{-s} - k^{-s})),$$

and let  $\epsilon > 0$ . Then

$$|S_n - S_m| = \left| \sum_{k=m+1}^n A_k ((k+1)^{-s} - k^{-s}) \right|$$
  
$$\leq C \sum_{k=m+1}^n |(k+1)^{-s} - k^{-s}|$$
  
$$\leq \frac{C|s|}{\sigma} \sum_{k=m+1}^n \left( \frac{1}{k^{\sigma}} - \frac{1}{(k+1)^{\sigma}} \right)$$
  
$$= \frac{C|s|}{\sigma} \left( \frac{1}{(m+1)^{\sigma}} - \frac{1}{(n+1)^{\sigma}} \right)$$
  
$$\leq \frac{C|s|}{\sigma} (m+1)^{\sigma}$$
  
$$< \epsilon$$

for m sufficiently large.

**Corollary 10.57.** Let  $\chi$  be a non-trivial Dirichlet character (mod N). Then  $L(\chi, s)$  converges for  $\Re(s) > 0$ .

*Proof.* We have

$$A_N = \chi(1) + \dots + \chi(n) = 0$$

by Proposition 10.36, so the sequence  $\{A_n\}$  is periodic modulon N and hence it is finite and bounded, so the result follows from Proposition 10.56.

10.7. Application to real quadratic fields. Let  $d \in \mathbb{Z} - \{0, 1\}$  be square-free, and consider the field  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ .

**Lemma 10.58.** The map  $\mathbb{Z} \to \{\pm 1\} \cup \{0\}$ ,  $n \mapsto \left(\frac{\Delta_K}{n}\right)$  is a Dirichlet character of conductor  $\Delta_K$ . Here,  $\left(\frac{\Delta_K}{n}\right)$  is as in Definition 10.43.

Proof. Exercise.

Theorem 10.59. We have

$$\zeta_K(z) = \zeta(z)L(\chi, z).$$

*Proof.* Recall that

$$\zeta_K(z) = \prod_{\mathfrak{p}} \frac{1}{1 - N(\mathfrak{p})^{-s}} = \prod_p \prod_{\mathfrak{p} \mid \langle p \rangle} \frac{1}{1 - N(\mathfrak{p})^{-s}}.$$

We now recall the results from Lemma 5.25: Let p be an odd prime.

- (1) p is inert in K if and only if  $\left(\frac{d}{p}\right) = -1;$
- (2) p is split in K if and only if  $\left(\frac{d}{p}\right) = 1;$
- (3) p is ramified in K if and only if  $\left(\frac{d}{p}\right) = 0$ ;

Hence

(1) if  $\langle p \rangle$  is inert in K, then  $N(\mathfrak{p}) = p^2$ , and so

$$\frac{1}{1 - N(\mathfrak{p})^{-s}} = \frac{1}{1 - p^{-2s}} = \frac{1}{1 - p^{-s}} \frac{1}{1 - \left(\frac{d}{p}\right) p^{-s}};$$

(2) if  $\langle p \rangle = \mathfrak{pq}$ , then  $N(\mathfrak{p}) = N(\mathfrak{q}) = p$ , and

$$\frac{1}{1-N(\mathfrak{p})^{-s}}\frac{1}{1-N(\mathfrak{q})^{-s}} = \frac{1}{(1-p^{-s})^2} = \frac{1}{1-p^{-s}}\frac{1}{1-\left(\frac{d}{p}\right)p^{-s}};$$

(3) if 
$$\langle p \rangle = \mathfrak{p}^2$$
, then  $N(\mathfrak{p}) = p$ , so

$$\prod_{\mathfrak{p}} \frac{1}{1 - N(\mathfrak{p})^{-s}} = \frac{1}{1 - p^{-s}} = \frac{1}{1 - p^{-s}} \frac{1}{1 - \left(\frac{d}{p}\right)p^{-s}}$$

We deduce that for all odd primes p

$$\prod_{\mathfrak{p}|\langle p\rangle} \frac{1}{1 - N(\mathfrak{p})^{-s}} = \frac{1}{1 - p^{-s}} \frac{1}{1 - \chi(p)p^{-s}}$$

Similarly, using Lemma 5.25, we have

$$\prod_{\mathfrak{p}|\langle 2\rangle} \frac{1}{1 - N(\mathfrak{p})^{-s}} = \frac{1}{1 - 2^{-s}} \frac{1}{1 - \chi(2)2^{-s}}$$

**Corollary 10.60.** We have  $L(\chi, 1) \neq 0$ ; more precisely, if  $m \notin \{-1, -3\}$ , from Example 10.27, we see that

- m > 0:  $L(\chi, 1) = \frac{h_K 2 \log |\epsilon|}{|\Delta_K|}$ . m < 0:  $L(\chi, 1) = \frac{h_K \pi}{|\Delta_K|}$ ,

and we have similar results for m = -1, -3.

**Remark 10.61.** It is often possible to evaluate  $L(\chi, 1)$  explicitly, by reducing it to a finite sum. This gives a way of computing  $h_K$  for quadratic number fields.

10.8. Application to primes in arithmetic progressions. Let  $n \ge 2$ , let and  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\zeta_N)$ , where  $\zeta_N$  is a primitive *n*th root of unity.

**Note 10.62.** K is a Galois extension of  $\mathbb{Q}$ , with Galois group  $\operatorname{Gal}(K/\mathbb{Q}) \cong (\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})^{\times}$ .

Theorem 10.63. We have

$$\zeta_K(s) = \zeta(s) \cdot \prod_{\chi} L(\chi, s),$$

where the product is taken over all the non-trivial characters of  $(\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})^{\times}$ .

*Proof.* Analogous to the proof of Theorem 10.59.

**Corollary 10.64.** Let  $\chi$  be a non-trivial character of  $(\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})^{\times}$ . Then  $L(\chi, 1) \neq 0$ .

*Proof.* Clear since both  $\zeta_K(s)$  and  $\zeta(s)$  have a simple pole at s = 1 and  $L(\chi, 1)$  is well-defined. 

Notation 10.65. Let f(s) and g(s) be complex valued functions in a neighborhood of 1. We write  $f(s) \sim G(s)$  when  $s \to 1+$ , if the limit of  $\frac{f(s)}{g(s)}$  exists when s approaches 1 along the real axis from the right.

Proposition 10.66. We have

$$\sum_{p} \frac{1}{p^s} \sim \log(s-1).$$

*Proof.* By the Euler product of  $\zeta(s)$ , we have

$$\log \zeta(s) = \sum_{p} \log(1 - p^{-s})$$
$$= \sum_{p} \frac{1}{p^s} + \sum_{n} \sum_{p} \frac{1}{np^{ns}}$$

Since  $\zeta(s) \sim \log(s-1)$ , it is sufficient to prove that  $\sum_{n\geq 2} \sum_{p=1}^{n} \frac{1}{np^{ns}}$  is bounded for  $\Re(s) > 1$ . But

$$\sum_{n \ge 2} \sum_{p} \frac{1}{np^{ns}} \le \sum_{n \ge 2} \sum_{p} \frac{1}{p^{ns}} \le \sum_{p} \frac{1}{p^{\sigma}(p^{\sigma} - 1)} \le \sum_{n} \frac{1}{n^{\sigma}(n^{\sigma} - 1)}$$

which is convergent for  $\sigma > \frac{1}{2}$ .

Corollary 10.67. There are infinitely many primes.

**Proposition 10.68.** Let  $\chi$  be a character of  $(\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})^{\times}$ , and let  $f_{\chi}(s) = \sum_{p \nmid N} \frac{\chi(p)}{p^s}$ .

- If χ = 1, then f<sub>χ</sub>(s) ~ log(s − 1).
  if χ ≠ 1, then f<sub>χ</sub>(s) is bounded as s → 1<sup>+</sup>.

Proof. (1) is immediate from Proposition 10.66, since the two sums differ by only finitely many primes. For (2), we adapt the argument from the proof of Proposition 10.66. Exercise. 

**Theorem 10.69.** Let  $a \in \mathbb{Z}$  coprime to N. Let

$$P_a = \{p : p \equiv a \pmod{N}\}$$

Then  $P_a$  is inifinite.

Proof. Let  $g_a(s) = \sum_{p \in P_a} p^{-s}$ . Claim. We have

$$g_a(s) = \frac{1}{\varphi(N)} \sum_{\chi} \chi(a)^{-1} f_{\chi}(s),$$

where the sum is taken over all characters of  $(\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})^{\times}$ .

*Proof of claim.* We have

$$\sum_{\chi} \chi(a)^{-1} f_{\chi}(s) = \sum_{p \nmid N} \left( \sum_{\chi} \chi(a)^{-1} \chi(p) \right) p^{-s} = \sum_{p \nmid N} \left( \sum_{\chi} \chi(a^{-1}p) \right) p^{-s}.$$

By Corollary 10.37, we have

$$\sum_{\chi} \chi(a^{-1}p) = \begin{cases} \varphi(N) & \text{if } a^{-1}p \equiv 1 \pmod{N} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

We deduce from Proposition 10.68 that  $g_a(s) \sim \frac{1}{\varphi(N)} \log(s-1)$ , so in particular the set  $P_a$  is infinite.